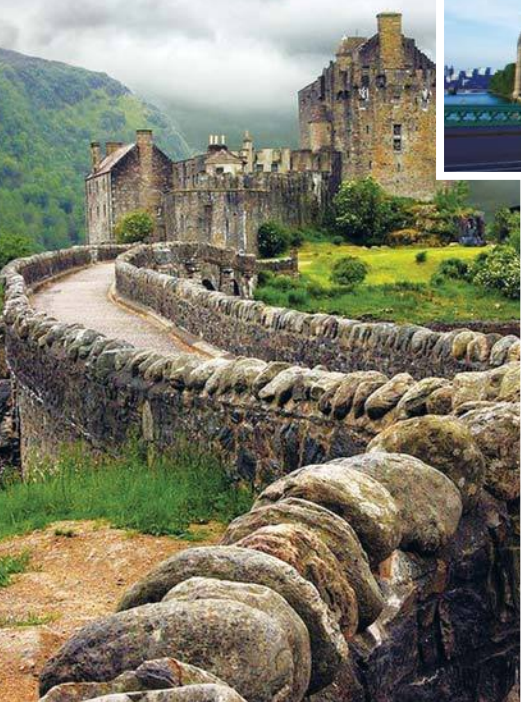




**BE  
the  
BEST!**

**О. П. МЕЛЬЧИНА**



**БУДЬ  
ЛУЧШИМ!**

**ГОТОВИМСЯ  
К ОЛИМПИАДАМ  
ПО АНГЛИЙСКОМУ  
ЯЗЫКУ**

О. П. Мельчина

# **BE THE BEST! БУДЬ ЛУЧШИМ!**

**ГОТОВИМСЯ К ОЛИМПИАДАМ  
ПО АНГЛИЙСКОМУ ЯЗЫКУ**

Москва  
Издательство МЦНМО  
2017

**Мельчина О. П.**

М48 Be the best! Будь лучшим! Готовимся к олимпиадам по английскому языку. — М.: МЦНМО, 2017. — 160 с.

ISBN 978-5-4439-1114-4

Данное учебное пособие содержит задания, направленные на подготовку к олимпиадам по английскому языку учащихся 9–11 классов, и включает краткое описание особенностей английской лексики, грамматики и лингвострановедения. Материалы пособия позволяют развивать у школьников критическое мышление, способность к самоанализу и эффективно готовить учащихся ко всем этапам олимпиад по английскому языку, от школьного до всероссийского.

Издание предназначено для преподавателей и учащихся средней школы.

ББК 81.2Англ

Учебно-методическое издание

*Оксана Петровна Мельчина*

BE THE BEST! Будь лучшим!

Готовимся к олимпиадам по английскому языку

Издательство Московского центра

непрерывного математического образования

119002, Москва, Большой Власьевский пер., 11. Тел. (499) 241-08-04

Подписано в печать 17.11.2016 г. Формат 70×90<sup>1</sup>/<sub>16</sub>. Бумага офсетная.

Печать офсетная. Тираж 1500 экз. Заказ .

Отпечатано в соответствии с предоставленными материалами

в ЗАО «ИПК Парето-Принт», г. Тверь, [www.pareto-print.ru](http://www.pareto-print.ru)

12+

---

Книги издательства МЦНМО можно приобрести в магазине «Математическая книга», Москва, Большой Власьевский пер., д. 11. Тел. (495) 745-80-31. E-mail: [biblio@mccme.ru](mailto:biblio@mccme.ru)

---

ISBN 978-5-4439-1114-4

© Мельчина О. П., 2017.

© МЦНМО, 2017.

## ПРЕДИСЛОВИЕ

Данное учебное пособие содержит задания, направленные на подготовку к олимпиадам по английскому языку учащихся 9–11 классов, и включает краткое описание особенностей английской лексики, грамматики и лингвострановедения. Материалы пособия позволяют развивать у школьников критическое мышление, способность к самоанализу и эффективно готовить учащихся ко всем этапам олимпиад по английскому языку, от школьного до всероссийского.

Пособие состоит из следующих разделов.

1. Предлоги (предлоги места, направления, времени и др.; зависимые предлоги и предлоги, включенные в неразделимые единства; фразовые глаголы и образованные от них существительные).

2. Словарный запас (правила формирования слов, идиомы, элементы лингвострановедения и различных жанров речи).

3. Грамматика (особенности употребления артиклей, прилагательных и наречий, причастий и придаточных предложений).

4. Типы тестовых заданий из раздела *Use of English*.

5. Аутентичные задания, взятые из материалов олимпиад различного уровня за последние годы.

В конце пособия даны ответы для самопроверки.

Надеемся, что пособие поможет школьникам подготовиться к олимпиадам по английскому языку и показать хорошие результаты.

Желаем удачи!

# PART I. MASTER YOUR PREPOSITIONS

## 1. PREPOSITIONS OF POSITION OR PLACE

### 1.1. Where?

<b>on</b> (on the surface of sth)	<b>in</b> (inside sth)
<i>The book is <b>on</b> the table. There are toys <b>on</b> the floor.</i>	<i>The money is <b>in</b> the purse. There is a cat <b>in</b> the house. I like to walk <b>in</b> the rain.</i>

<b>at</b>	
<p><b>1)</b> near, close to sth: <i>She was standing <b>at</b> the blackboard.</i></p> <p><b>2)</b> used to say exactly where sth/sb is, or where sth happens: <i>They live <b>at</b> 25 Victoria Street./ I was waiting <b>at</b> the bus stop./ Dad's <b>at</b> work (= in the place where he works).</i></p> <p><b>3)</b> used to say that sb is studying somewhere regularly: <i>Is Ann still <b>at</b> school?/ He was a student <b>at</b> Oxford in the 1990s.</i></p>	

<b>above/over</b> (in a higher position than sth else)	<b>under/below</b> (lower than sth else)	<b>behind</b> (at the back of a thing)
<i>There is a lamp <b>above</b> the table. Our office is <b>above</b> the hair-dresser's.</i>	<i>Write your name <b>under</b> your picture. There's a box <b>under</b> the bed.</i>	<i>There is a garden <b>behind</b> our house. I turned to the man standing <b>behind</b> me.</i>

<b>between</b> (in the space that separates two things, people or places)	<b>among</b> (in the middle of a group of people or things)
<i>I was sitting <b>between</b> Sam and Joe. The ball rolled <b>between</b> his feet.</i>	<i>The girl quickly disappeared <b>among</b> the crowd.</i>

<b>beside</b> (next to or very close to the side of sb/sth)	<b>beneath</b> (in a lower position than sth, or directly under sth)	<b>around</b> (surrounding or on all sides of sth)
<i>Pete came up and sat <b>beside</b> me. There was a small table <b>beside</b> the bed.</i>	<i>He was standing on the bridge looking at the river <b>beneath</b>. The dolphins disappeared <b>beneath</b> the waves.</i>	<i>They were sitting <b>around</b> the dinner table. The Romans built a defensive wall <b>around</b> the city.</i>

**Ex. 1. Complete the following sentences with *in* or *at*.**

1. Where's Ann? – She's \_\_\_\_ Paris now.
2. They met \_\_\_\_ the cinema and then went to walk in the park.
3. They agreed to meet \_\_\_\_ the cinema just before the beginning of the film.
4. He was \_\_\_\_ the kitchen cooking breakfast when he heard the door bell ring.
5. Their house is \_\_\_\_ the seaside.
6. This breed of fish lives only \_\_\_\_ the sea.
7. She lives \_\_\_\_ Wales, which is a country \_\_\_\_ the west of Britain.
8. I left my bags \_\_\_\_ the station \_\_\_\_ a left luggage locker.
9. Heather is \_\_\_\_ University now. She's going to graduate next year.
10. My younger son is still \_\_\_\_ school. He wants to become a fireman.

**Ex.2. Complete the following sentences with the correct preposition from the box.**

in	on	below	behind	above	around
		among	beneath	beside	

1. Our cat just loves to curl up \_\_\_\_\_ the fire and go to sleep.
2. She has beautiful works of art all \_\_\_\_\_ her house, even in the kitchen.
3. Last night the temperature fell to three degrees \_\_\_\_\_ zero.
4. The burglar heard the noise coming from upstairs, so he hid \_\_\_\_\_ the curtains.
5. These days, politicians like to walk \_\_\_\_\_ the crowds, shaking hands and saying one or two words.
6. Look! There's an exotic bird \_\_\_\_\_ the tree!
7. The plane took off and was soon flying \_\_\_\_\_ the clouds.
8. The view from the top of the mountain was breathtaking. We could see the town and the river \_\_\_\_\_ us, and people who looked like ants.
9. Do you know how many books you've got \_\_\_\_\_ your bookcase?
10. When I came into my bedroom, I saw a huge dog sleeping \_\_\_\_\_ my bed!
11. She wore a beautiful silk shawl \_\_\_\_\_ her shoulders.
12. Let's go to our dacha on Sunday and spend the whole day \_\_\_\_\_ the open air
13. We live \_\_\_\_\_ a new residential area on the outskirts of London.
14. There's a small garden in the backyard \_\_\_\_\_ our house.

**Ex.3. Use the words from column 2 in column 3. Cross out each word in column 2 when you use it.**

*Where is Ted's flat?*

Column 1	Column 2	Column 3	Column 4
1. Ted's flat is 2. There are some TV aerials 3. Ted's flat is 4. It is 5. It is 6. Peter's flat is	<b>on</b> <b>in</b> <b>above</b> <b>below</b> <b>on top of</b> <b>at the top of</b>	_____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____	Baker Street. the building. the third floor. the building. a coffee shop. Ted's flat.

**Ex.4. Fill in the blanks with prepositions of place.**

This is the entrance to Western Recording Studios Ltd. The receptionist is sitting \_\_\_\_\_ her chair, with a lamp \_\_\_\_\_ her. There is a clock \_\_\_\_\_ the wall \_\_\_\_\_ her, and a tall plant \_\_\_\_\_ a pot stands \_\_\_\_\_ the floor. A visitor is sitting \_\_\_\_\_ the armchair \_\_\_\_\_ a desk. The studios are \_\_\_\_\_ 53 Alexandra Street, \_\_\_\_\_ the first floor. \_\_\_\_\_ the studios there is a tourist agency. There is a small caf \_\_\_\_\_ the ground floor of the same building.

**1.2. Where?**

<b>opposite</b> (facing each other)	<b>across</b> (on the opposite side of sth)
<i>The people sitting <b>opposite</b> us looked very familiar.</i> <i>There was a big photo of Paris on the wall <b>opposite</b> the door.</i>	<i>My best friend lives <b>across</b> the road.</i> <i>He knew that just <b>across</b> the border lay freedom.</i>

**1.3. Where?**

<b>in</b>	<b>on</b>	<b>by</b>	<b>from</b>	<b>off</b>
<i><b>in</b> the sea</i> <i><b>in</b> the north</i> <i><b>in</b> Spain</i>	<i><b>on</b> the island</i> <i><b>on</b> the coast of</i> <i><b>on</b> the ocean</i>	<i><b>by</b> the river</i> <i>/sea</i> <i><b>by</b> the bed</i>	<i>10 km <b>from</b></i>	<i><b>off</b> the coast</i>
<b>Next to/beside</b> = very close to sb/sth: <i>There was a little girl sitting <b>next to</b> me</i>				

**Ex.5. Complete the sentences with the appropriate prepositions. Consult the tables in 1.1, 1.2 and 1.3.**

**A**

1. Sue lives \_\_\_\_ France \_\_\_\_ the island.
2. The bank is \_\_\_\_ the cinema.
3. Ted was sitting \_\_\_\_ Janet.
4. I left my coat \_\_\_\_ the bed here, but it seems to have disappeared.
5. The hotel is \_\_\_\_ the bus stop, so you won't have to walk long.
6. The children can sit \_\_\_\_ you in the back seats.
7. There was no table \_\_\_\_ the bed, so I had to put the paper on the floor.
8. You can't disturb John now. He's \_\_\_\_ bed.
9. I remember there was a garden \_\_\_\_ my house and the school, but now there's a big building instead.
10. I looked up and saw grey clouds \_\_\_\_ me. I wished I had taken an umbrella.
11. There are a number of smaller towns \_\_\_\_ Boston which are worth visiting.
12. Ice-cream and lemonade are on sale \_\_\_\_ the foyer.
13. I hope you enjoyed your holiday \_\_\_\_ the Black Sea coast.
14. I've got a pretty little house \_\_\_\_ the river.
15. It's lunch time, so many people are \_\_\_\_ a cafe \_\_\_\_ the street.
16. Look! The towel is \_\_\_\_ the hook \_\_\_\_ the basin.
17. Where's the basket? – It's \_\_\_\_ the table \_\_\_\_ the kitchen.
18. The lifeguard was standing \_\_\_\_ the door watching the people \_\_\_\_ the dancing hall.
19. When I looked through the window, I saw a wood \_\_\_\_ the field.
20. You can't use the computer here. It's \_\_\_\_ my study downstairs.

**B**

The British Tourist Books is \_\_\_\_ Regent Street. It is \_\_\_\_ 22 Regent Street, \_\_\_\_ a large building called Tourism House. There is a cinema \_\_\_\_ it and a bank next to it. Sue is talking to Tina on the telephone. 'So you and Paul can come on Tuesday! Good! Now, our offices are \_\_\_\_ Tourism House. We're \_\_\_\_ the second floor. The Regency Restaurant is \_\_\_\_ us. It's \_\_\_\_ the top of Tourism House, and we're just \_\_\_\_ it. You'll recognise the building easily, there are some flags at the entrance. It is right \_\_\_\_ the underground station'.

**C**

Tina, Paul, Ted and Sue stayed in hostels \_\_\_\_ many different places. Paul liked hostel C, because it was \_\_\_\_ a river, and hostel D because it was \_\_\_\_ a lake. Sue liked hostel A because it was \_\_\_\_ a mountain, and she liked hostel B even better, because it was right \_\_\_\_ the top of a mountain. Ted liked hostel F, because it was \_\_\_\_ the road, hostel E because it was \_\_\_\_ the wood, and of course he liked hostels A and B too, because they were \_\_\_\_ the road.



## D

Portsmouth is a town \_\_\_\_ England. It is \_\_\_\_ the south of England, and it is \_\_\_\_ the coast. \_\_\_\_ the coast, near Portsmouth, there is an island called the Isle of Wight. This island is south \_\_\_\_ Portsmouth. It is famous for water sports. Tina and Paul are staying \_\_\_\_ St Helen's, which is \_\_\_\_ the east of the island. St Helen's is about ten kilometers \_\_\_\_ Portsmouth.

## E

Scotland is \_\_\_\_ the north of the British Isles. It is \_\_\_\_ the north of England. Scotland is a country with its own traditions which are rare \_\_\_\_ modern world. Scotland is part of Britain, but it is not England. It differs from England in many ways. Scotland has her own administration of government which is centered \_\_\_\_ Edinburgh. She has her own national heroes, her national dances and songs (some of which are very popular \_\_\_\_ England, too); her poetry (some of which is famous \_\_\_\_ the English-speaking world).

## F

One of the towns, right \_\_\_\_ the centre of England is Stratford, Shakespeare's birthplace. \_\_\_\_ the bank of the river Avon there is a monument to Shakespeare. Not far \_\_\_\_ it is Shakespeare's house. It's a small house with a garden \_\_\_\_ it. Now Stratford is a busy town. There are many people and cars \_\_\_\_ its streets.

## G

\_\_\_\_ the heart of England, about 112 miles north west \_\_\_\_ London, is Birmingham, a city with over a million inhabitants. The district \_\_\_\_ Birmingham is an industrial district. There are factories and mines \_\_\_\_ it. The nearest port is Liverpool \_\_\_\_ the mouth of the river Mersey \_\_\_\_ the Irish Sea.

## 2. PREPOSITIONS OF DIRECTION OR MOVEMENT

### 2.1

to	in	along
<i>The spaceship flew <b>to</b> Mars. They go from house <b>to</b> house selling goods.</i>	<i>We were walking <b>in</b> the woods. The children were running <b>in</b> the yard.</i>	<i>We were driving <b>along</b> the road. Go <b>along</b> the street and then turn left.</i>

### 2.2

<b>into</b> (from one place to the inside of another)	<b>on to</b> (from a place to a surface)
<i>She came <b>into</b> the room and sat down on the sofa. Put your books <b>into</b> your bags.</i>	<i>The cat jumped <b>on to</b> the table and picked up a piece of chicken.</i>

## 2.3

<b>out of</b> (from inside sth)	<b>off</b> (a. from a flat surface; b. down from)
<i>The child took a toy car <b>out of</b> the box. The students went <b>out of</b> the lecture hall and made for the door.</i>	<i>She took the bag <b>off</b> the chair. The cat jumped <b>off</b> the windowsill and ran away.</i>

## 2.4

<b>over</b>	<b>across</b>	<b>through</b>	<b>past</b>
<i>We had to climb <b>over</b> a high wall to get into the yard.</i>	<i>The children swam <b>across</b> the river and reached the opposite bank.</i>	<i>She went <b>through</b> a crowd of people to get to the speaker.</i>	<i>The path goes <b>past</b> a church.</i>

**Ex.6. Complete the sentences with the appropriate prepositions. Consult tables in 2.1, 2.2, 2.3 and 2.4.**

- He climbed \_\_\_\_\_ the wall and ran \_\_\_\_\_ the field.
- She took her purse \_\_\_\_\_ her bag and paid the taxi driver.
- The dog jumped \_\_\_\_\_ my lap, and settled down for a good sleep.
- She went \_\_\_\_\_ Edinburgh on a business trip.
- The police car chased the robbers \_\_\_\_\_ the streets.
- You need to go \_\_\_\_\_ several huts before you reach her new country house.
- He jumped \_\_\_\_\_ the table and began to shout at the top of his voice.
- The house \_\_\_\_\_ the river is for sale.
- I was angry with him for bringing his dog \_\_\_\_\_ the kitchen.
- There was a beautiful bridge \_\_\_\_\_ the river; now you have to cross it by boat.
- They went \_\_\_\_\_ a church, \_\_\_\_\_ the wood, \_\_\_\_\_ a bridge, \_\_\_\_\_ the tunnel and \_\_\_\_\_ the railway line.
- Paul fell \_\_\_\_\_ a bridge \_\_\_\_\_ a river. He swam \_\_\_\_\_ the river, then climbed \_\_\_\_\_ it, and climbed \_\_\_\_\_ some rocks. He ran \_\_\_\_\_ the field and jumped \_\_\_\_\_ a gate. There were some bulls \_\_\_\_\_ that field, so he climbed \_\_\_\_\_ a pile of stones, and then jumped \_\_\_\_\_ the stones, \_\_\_\_\_ the ground on the other side of the fence.

## 2.5

		a town or village	a country
<i>She flew/went/travelled etc</i> <i>She came</i> <i>She got</i>	<b>to</b>	<i>Oxford</i>	<i>England</i>
<i>She left</i>	<b>for</b>	<i>Oxford</i>	<i>England</i>
<i>She arrived</i>	<b>in</b>	<i>Oxford (in a part of the town)</i>	<i>England (we think of the place as an area which surrounds sb)</i>
<i>She arrived</i> ( <u>Never</u> : <i>She arrived to</i> )	<b>at</b>	<i>Oxford (e.g. by train, at the station)</i>	<i>Monaco (we think of the place as a point of a journey. Note that we do not use at for larger countries.)</i>

## 2.6

<b>up</b> (to a higher position)	<b>down</b> (to a lower position)	<b>towards</b> (in the direction of sb/sth)
<i>They walked slowly <b>up</b> the hill.</i>	<i>The sun was going <b>down</b>.</i>	<i>They cycled west, <b>towards</b> Sussex.</i>

**Ex.7. These are some Marco Polo's travels from Venice.**

**Write *at*, *in*, *to* or *for* in the gaps below.**

1. In 1271 Marco Polo left \_\_\_\_ Persia.
2. Some time later he arrived \_\_\_\_ China.
3. In 1272 he got \_\_\_\_ Tibet.
4. In 1292 he went \_\_\_\_ India.
5. In about 1294 he went back \_\_\_\_ Persia.
6. He arrived \_\_\_\_ Tabriz in 1294 or 1295.
7. At the end of 1295 he came back \_\_\_\_ Venice.

**Ex.8. Fill in the blanks with prepositions of place or direction.**

**Consult tables 2.1–2.6.**

## A

1. The London Zoo is \_\_\_\_ Regent's Park \_\_\_\_ London.
2. They were travelling \_\_\_\_ England for three weeks.
3. Looking \_\_\_\_ the wall she saw children running \_\_\_\_ the garden, shouting something excitedly to each other.

4. She was arranging the cards \_\_\_\_ the desk in alphabetical order.
5. The girl came \_\_\_\_ the room and sat down \_\_\_\_ the sofa \_\_\_\_ him.
6. She said she had had three nice weeks \_\_\_\_ Spain.
7. The Serpentine is a lake \_\_\_\_ the middle of Hyde Park. In summer you can swim \_\_\_\_ the Serpentine or go out \_\_\_\_ a boat.
8. The first settlements were \_\_\_\_ two hills \_\_\_\_ the north bank of the Thames.
9. In the times of the Romans, there was a wall \_\_\_\_ London. \_\_\_\_ the city walls there were gates; there are still several of them: Bishopsgate and Ludgate.
10. The island of Iona is situated \_\_\_\_ the west of Scotland. In fact it is one of the smallest islands \_\_\_\_ the Atlantic.
11. This small island is famous for its beaches, and in summer holidaymakers arrive \_\_\_\_ the island. They spend time lying \_\_\_\_ the sun and swimming \_\_\_\_ the warm sea.
12. We shall first go \_\_\_\_ that part of the museum where the old masters are.
13. When will you leave \_\_\_\_ Malta? – I'm planning to fly there tomorrow.
14. There's a huge bookshop \_\_\_\_ the street \_\_\_\_ my house.
15. Tourists from the USA are arriving \_\_\_\_ Moscow in a few days.
16. If you want to get \_\_\_\_ the underground station, go \_\_\_\_ this street.
17. Jack ran \_\_\_\_ the room and moved \_\_\_\_ the exit.
18. The bank where I work is \_\_\_\_ the cinema.
19. I met Sue yesterday. She said she lives \_\_\_\_ a small island \_\_\_\_ the coast of France.
20. We heard a noise, looked up and saw that there was a plane high \_\_\_\_ us.
21. The plane landed \_\_\_\_ Athens Airport, which is \_\_\_\_ the sea.
22. He was cold \_\_\_\_ bed so his mother put a blanket \_\_\_\_ him.
23. When Peter sheltered \_\_\_\_ a tree an apple fell \_\_\_\_ his head.
24. The swimming pool wasn't deep, so we couldn't dive \_\_\_\_ it.

### B

When John saw the large crowd that had gathered \_\_\_\_ the street, he wasn't sure at first what had happened. There were so many people blocking the way \_\_\_\_ the hotel, that he had to push his way \_\_\_\_ them to get \_\_\_\_ the door. \_\_\_\_ the door he found two policemen who were trying to hold the crowd back. Then John noticed that \_\_\_\_ the crowd there were some people holding placards which read: 'We love you Sally.' Of course, that was it. Sally Good was a footballer, the first woman to play for England. So John decided to join the crowd and wait \_\_\_\_ she appeared. Soon a smiling woman came \_\_\_\_ the door and waved \_\_\_\_ the crowd. John was completely taken by surprise when she came \_\_\_\_ him, took his arm and said, 'Remember me? I'm the girl who used to sit next \_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_ school.'

### C

Stephen arrived \_\_\_\_ Bluffville in the early evening, and walked \_\_\_\_ the bus station \_\_\_\_ the town centre, looking for somewhere to stay. There was a huge old-fashioned hotel, though it was obviously closed. The windows \_\_\_\_ the street level were covered with sheets

of corrugated iron. Once there must have been many travelers passing \_\_\_\_ Bluffville, but now the motorway \_\_\_\_ the south passed the town several miles away, and so very few people stopped. Stephen found a telephone \_\_\_\_ the run-down bar. And called the nearest motel which turned out to be seven miles away \_\_\_\_ the motorway. He asked the barman, who was reading a comic book, how much a taxi would cost to take him \_\_\_\_ the motel. The man stared hard at Stephen before he said, 'No taxi here, – haven't been any \_\_\_\_ more than ten years.'

### 3. PREPOSITIONS OF TIME

#### 3.1. When?

In	On	At
<i>2010</i> (= a year) <i>(the) winter</i> (= a season) <i>April</i> (= a month) <i>the morning/evening</i> (= a part of a day)	<i>Friday</i> (= a day of the week) <i>my birthday/New Year's Day</i> (= a particular day) <i>1 April</i> (= a date)	<i>Easter/Christmas</i> (= a religious holiday) <i>6 o'clock/midday</i> (= a time)

#### 3.2. When?

**There are no prepositions before *last*, *next*, *this* and *every*:**

*There were many events in Brighton last year.*  
*There's a carnival next Monday.*  
*It's taking place this month.*  
*It happens every year.*

#### Ex. 9. Complete this summary of events in Brighton.

\_\_\_\_ 2007, there were many public events in Brighton \_\_\_\_ the spring. For example, \_\_\_\_ Easter there was a carnival (it was \_\_\_\_ Monday 20 April), and \_\_\_\_ May there were three big events. \_\_\_\_ the summer and autumn there were fewer events. There was a fishing boat race \_\_\_\_ a Saturday in July, a tennis tournament \_\_\_\_ October, and a race for vintage cars from London \_\_\_\_ 7 November. Of course, there were many parties and dances \_\_\_\_ 31 December and \_\_\_\_ New Year's Day. The programme of public events was similar \_\_\_\_ 2008.

#### Ex.10. Complete a part of the letter below with prepositions of time, if necessary.

"...I'm sorry we weren't here \_\_\_\_ May! There aren't so many events \_\_\_\_ this month, but there's a fishing boat race \_\_\_\_ next Saturday. \_\_\_\_ Friday we're going riding. (Do you remember? I had some riding lessons \_\_\_\_ last summer.) I'd like to be here \_\_\_\_ October, when there's a big tennis tournament. They have the tournament \_\_\_\_ every October.

Yesterday I went to a sports centre \_\_\_\_ the morning. We started playing table tennis \_\_\_\_ 10 o'clock, had lunch \_\_\_\_ 12 o'clock, and \_\_\_\_ the afternoon we played basketball and then swam. \_\_\_\_ the evening we went to a disco, and I got to bed \_\_\_\_ 2 o'clock \_\_\_\_ the morning.

After breakfast \_\_\_\_ this morning we hired bikes and biked round Brighton. We're having a rest now, but \_\_\_\_ this evening we're going to a concert, which begins \_\_\_\_ 8.30".

### 3.3. When?

from ... to/until/till	before	after
<i>She lived in Oxford <b>from</b> 2008 <b>to</b> 2010. The London Eye is open every day <b>from</b> 10 a.m. <b>till</b> 8 p.m..</i>	<i>She was born <b>before</b> Ann, who is a year younger. I finished the course <b>before</b> the end of the year.</i>	<i>She started school <b>after</b> her 5<sup>th</sup> birthday. We stayed <b>after</b> classes to discuss our tour.</i>

### 3.4. When?

<b>for</b> (used with periods which we measure or count)	<b>during</b> (used with periods which we do not measure or count)
<i>She lived in Oxford <b>for</b> two years. They used to visit our town <b>for</b> many years.</i>	<i>He began playing the guitar <b>during</b> his school days. They discussed a new plan <b>during</b> lunch.</i>

### 3.5. When?

<b>since</b> (used with a point in time)	<b>by</b> (= before, not later than)
<i>She has lived in London <b>since</b> 2000. <b>Since</b> when have you been learning English?</i>	<i>She had left school <b>by</b> July 2010. <b>By</b> what date will you stop studying altogether?</i>

### Ex.11. Fill in the blanks with appropriate prepositions of time.

#### A. in, on or at

- The train arrives \_\_\_\_ this small station \_\_\_\_ night and stops for three minutes only.
- We got to the place of our destination \_\_\_\_ about eleven.
- We found out that we were born \_\_\_\_ the same day \_\_\_\_ the same year.
- She always leaves town \_\_\_\_ summer.
- He always has a nap \_\_\_\_ the afternoon.
- \_\_\_\_ 2014 Peter worked for a tourist agency. \_\_\_\_ 16 September, 2014, he suddenly decided to quit the job and start a new career.
- He usually finishes writing letters \_\_\_\_ 6 \_\_\_\_ the evening, and then he goes home.

8. I never get up early \_\_\_\_ Saturdays and Sundays.
9. I was absolutely sure that he will arrive \_\_\_\_ the appointed time – he was always punctual.
10. Children throughout the world go merrymaking \_\_\_\_ Christmas.

### **B. *till or before***

1. We'll be waiting for you \_\_\_\_ 6 o'clock.
2. It happened \_\_\_\_ our arrival.
3. They were watching the game \_\_\_\_ the end of the match.
4. The discussion continued \_\_\_\_ late at night.
5. They'd been living there \_\_\_\_ the very beginning of the war.
6. Our office will move to a new building \_\_\_\_ the end of the year.
7. Wake me up \_\_\_\_ 7 o'clock, please.
8. He has enough time to look through newspapers \_\_\_\_ breakfast.
9. We're going to stay here \_\_\_\_ the end of the summer.
10. They'd left \_\_\_\_ lunch.

### **C. *since or by***

1. \_\_\_\_ this time tomorrow they'll have crossed the Channel and will be in England.
2. She told me she had known him \_\_\_\_ 1998.
3. \_\_\_\_ three o'clock yesterday he had arranged everything for the trip.
4. Everybody knows that they've been friends \_\_\_\_ childhood.
5. It had got dark \_\_\_\_ the time they reached the railway station.
6. We haven't met \_\_\_\_ the time we went to school together.

### **D. *for or during***

I've been looking for this book \_\_\_\_ months.  
 The City is a busy place \_\_\_\_ the day and a quiet place at night.  
 We're going to stay in Vienna \_\_\_\_ another three days.  
 What places of interest did you see \_\_\_\_ your stay in Warsaw?  
 The sea was too rough and she was feeling sea-sick \_\_\_\_ the whole voyage.  
 \_\_\_\_ how long are you going to work at your research?  
 The old man slept badly on the train, and woke \_\_\_\_ several times \_\_\_\_ the night.  
 The captain said that the ship would wait for the passengers \_\_\_\_ only half an hour.

### 3.6 When?

during/through(out)	within/in	while – during ( <i>while</i> + clause; <i>during</i> + noun/-ing form)
<i>Long hair for men was fashionable <b>during/through(out)</b> much of the 70s.</i>	<i>The building of the bridge was completed <b>within/in</b> a year.</i>	<i>Please refrain from talking <b>while</b> the actors are performing. Please refrain from talking <b>during</b> the performance.</i>

**Ex. 12.** Use the words from the box to complete the text about the artist Paul Gauguin. Each word is used at least once.

after since for before from by in during until to

Paul Gauguin was born in Paris \_\_\_\_ 1848. He spent part of his childhood in Peru and the period \_\_\_\_ 1865 \_\_\_\_ 1871 at sea. He then became a stockbroker and a Sunday painter, collecting the works of the Impressionists and joining in their exhibitions. He gave up his job \_\_\_\_ 1883 and went to live in Brittany at Pont-Aven and Le Pouldu. He worked here \_\_\_\_ 1890, though \_\_\_\_ this period he spent two months with Van Gogh in Arles. He travelled to Tahiti \_\_\_\_ 1891 but \_\_\_\_ 1893 he had run out of money and was back in Paris. He returned to the South Sea islands two years later but he had suffered serious injuries in a fight with sailors \_\_\_\_ he left France. When he died \_\_\_\_ 1903 his health had been very poor \_\_\_\_ nine years.

His early work may be compared to that of the impressionists Cezanne and Pissarro, but \_\_\_\_ his voyage to Martinique he tried to introduce more colour in his painting and later abandoned Impressionism. With time, as he came to know the natives of Tahiti, he tried to express the simplicity of their lives through an art that was free from the conventions of the European tradition.

\_\_\_\_ his death, his influence on artists has been enormous. He is considered one of the fathers of non-naturalistic twentieth-century art.

**Ex.13.** Write a dash (–) or one of the prepositions from the box below.

at from for during since to until/till

‘Where have you been? We agreed to meet \_\_\_\_ 2.30. I’ve been waiting for you \_\_\_\_ hours! Well, not exactly hours, but \_\_\_\_ 2.35. Let me see – \_\_\_\_ 2.35 \_\_\_\_ now: that’s forty minutes. I’ve drunk three cups of coffee \_\_\_\_ that time and got very bored. If I’d brought a book I could at least have been reading \_\_\_\_ forty minutes. Anyway, what’s your excuse?’



'My excuse? I've been waiting for you \_\_\_\_ thirty minutes, in the street. We agreed to meet on the street corner, didn't we? Anyway, \_\_\_\_ next week let's meet \_\_\_\_ Tuesday. That's easier for me than Wednesday. See you \_\_\_\_ next Tuesday, then'.

### MIXED PRACTICE

#### Ex.14. Choose the correct preposition in *italics*.

##### The Eden Project

No, you are not looking at a scene *from/off* a James Bond movie! The futuristic buildings *in/on* the photo really exist. They are part of the Eden Project – one of the most spectacular of the Millennium projects.

The Eden Project is located *in/at* Cornwall, England, *in/on* a former clay pit over 50 metres deep. It consists of several huge domes, a large open area and a visitor centre. The Eden Project functions as a 'storeroom' for a huge number of plants *from/of* all over the world. The two main domes store plants *from/for* the tropical and temperate regions of the world, while the open area accommodates more local species.

The Eden Project has many other functions, however. It is a centre for education, art and science, promoting understanding of the delicate balance *between/among* using and conserving plant life. The project also includes exciting experiences for children, such as walking *through/over* the rainforest. In addition, it hosts concerts and provides other attractions including, *among/between* other things, an ice-skating rink in winter.

*For/During* the final stages of its construction, at the turn of the century, the Eden Project opened its doors to visitors. *For/Since* several months visitors were able to experience the challenges that lay behind the building of such a project. *From/In* spring 2001 this living theatre opened fully to the public, and *since/by* then it has become a major tourist attraction.

#### Ex.15. Complete each story with prepositions from the box above it.

A. across between by from in to
---------------------------------

A man from Kentucky, USA, had a dream that would take him far away \_\_\_\_ the rolling hills of his home state. The dream: to row \_\_\_\_ the icy Bering Strait \_\_\_\_ Alaska and Russia, \_\_\_\_ a bathtub! Unfortunately, the dream was not completely fulfilled. According to the explorer, '\_\_\_\_ late afternoon of the fourth day, although the sun was still high, the sea went rather thick. Next morning I was frozen in'. No problem. He abandoned the bathtub and walked \_\_\_\_ land.

B. after at behind in into to
-------------------------------

\_\_\_\_ the town of Vang, Norway, a group of thieves were carrying out a carefully planned robbery. Everything was going smoothly. They broke into a company \_\_\_\_ night, located the

safe and set up some explosives that would blow the door of the safe off, allowing them to get \_\_\_\_ the money inside. \_\_\_\_ setting a fuse, they ran \_\_\_\_ the next room, crouched \_\_\_\_ the wall and waited for the explosion.

It came a few seconds later. The safe door was blown off. So was the roof. In fact, the entire building collapsed, trapping the robbers, still crouching \_\_\_\_ the next office, \_\_\_\_ the ruins of the destroyed building. They hadn't foreseen one problem: there was no money \_\_\_\_ the safe, it had been filled with dynamite!

### C. along at between during in into on to

A Western businessman living \_\_\_\_ Japan had been warned about pickpockets \_\_\_\_ the Tokyo subway. These notorious thieves operated \_\_\_\_ the crowded rush hour.

One morning the businessman was \_\_\_\_ his usual subway stop when the train pulled in. He got on, and just as the train doors were about to close, he felt a man rub against him. In a panic, the businessman reached for his wallet. It wasn't \_\_\_\_ his pocket! As the doors began to close he saw that a man had just got off the train. The businessman pushed his hands \_\_\_\_ the closing doors and grabbed the thief's jacket. The doors closed, with the thief still \_\_\_\_ the platform but with the lapels of his jacket trapped \_\_\_\_ the tight grip of the businessman. As the train started to move, the expression on the thief's face changed. He began screaming as he ran \_\_\_\_ the platform. Finally, he held onto a post and his lapels tore away from his jacket. As the train moved \_\_\_\_ the tunnel, the businessman was satisfied that at least he had frightened the thief.

The man called his wife and asked her to cancel his credit card numbers. 'But honey', she said, 'I've been trying to call you. You left your wallet \_\_\_\_ the dressing table when you went \_\_\_\_ work today.'

### D. during/in to/until till after from since by in

There has been a tower on the site \_\_\_\_ the 11th century. \_\_\_\_ that time the building has been extended and developed. Today it is a major tourist attraction and a UNESCO World Heritage Site.

\_\_\_\_ the 1080s, William the Conqueror ordered the building of a massive stone tower in London. Subsequent monarchs added to it renovated existing buildings \_\_\_\_ the great fortress had been built. \_\_\_\_ both World Wars (1914–18 and 1939–45) the Tower was used as a prison and a place of execution.

The Tower is open \_\_\_\_ nine o'clock \_\_\_\_ half past four. Visitors can enter the Tower \_\_\_\_ four o'clock; \_\_\_\_ that time no tickets will be sold; please arrive \_\_\_\_ time as the latecomers will not be admitted. \_\_\_\_ winter months groups of 15 people may attend the ceremony of the keys but \_\_\_\_ summer this will be limited to six only.

**E. across along in on after from through to**

The beauty of Paris is that it's a very compact city, easy to get around, and to see the sights \_\_\_\_ a relatively short time. Start your tour \_\_\_\_ the very centre of the city, \_\_\_\_ the island \_\_\_\_ the Seine. Here you will find the impressive Palais de Justice, and north-east \_\_\_\_ the river is the City Hall of Paris. Going west \_\_\_\_ this, facing the west end of the island, you'll see the imposing east facade of the Louvre – the huge museum that sprawls alongside the river. \_\_\_\_ your visit to the Louvre, take a leisurely stroll \_\_\_\_ the lovely Tuileries Gardens \_\_\_\_ the Place de la Concorde. \_\_\_\_ there you could either go back south-east \_\_\_\_ the river and visit the stunning Musee d'Orsay, or stroll along the bustling Champs-Elysees \_\_\_\_ the magnificent Arc de Triomphe at the western end. A short distance south of this \_\_\_\_ the river you'll find the Eiffel Tower, possibly the most famous sight \_\_\_\_ Paris.

Two more sights that shouldn't be missed even on a short visit to Paris are the old Bastille prison to the east of the city, now an opera house, and \_\_\_\_ the north, \_\_\_\_ Montmartre Hill, the fascinating Place du Tertre, where artists gather \_\_\_\_ this day and will paint your portrait for a modest sum.

#### 4. OTHER MEANINGS OF SOME PREPOSITIONS

##### 4.1. How? (Ways of travelling)

by (in general)	on or in (when talking about particular vehicle)
<i>by bike/car/train/plane/air</i> <i>by boat/ship</i>	<i>on his/that etc bike/motorbike</i> <i>in my/this etc car/van/lorry</i> <i>on the train/plane/bus/ship*</i>

\*It is possible, but less usual, to say in the train, etc.

*on foot* = without using any vehicle

**Ex. 16. Write prepositions from the tables above in the blanks below, adding other words if necessary (e.g. the, a, his/her).**

In New York I went around \_\_\_\_ foot mainly. You can visit the Statue of Liberty \_\_\_\_ boat, and \_\_\_\_ boat I met another Englishman. We decided to go together to San Francisco \_\_\_\_ bus, because it's cheaper than going \_\_\_\_ train or \_\_\_\_ plane. Altogether we spent four days and nights \_\_\_\_ bus. We wanted to go round San Francisco \_\_\_\_ car; a cousin of mine lent me his car, but after we'd been \_\_\_\_ car for only a few hours, it broke down. By this time it was midnight, and we started to go back to my cousin's house \_\_\_\_ foot, but a lorry-driver stopped and took us back \_\_\_\_ lorry. I came back to London \_\_\_\_ air, and I can tell you I

was too tired to talk to anyone \_\_\_\_ plane! I think it would be great to do the trip from New York to San Francisco \_\_\_\_ motorbike. There's a book about a man who took his small son right across the States \_\_\_\_ old motorbike.

#### 4.2. How? (How things are made)

<b>of</b> (materials or substances)	<b>out of</b> (a completely different thing)	<b>by</b> (people)	<b>with</b> (tools and other aids)
<i>This table is made <b>of</b> wood.</i>	<i>She's making a fancy dress for her daughter <b>out of</b> old curtains.</i>	<i>The Pyramids were made <b>by</b> people who lived a long time ago.</i>	<i>On the beach we built sandcastles <b>with</b> our spades.</i>

#### 4.3. How? (How things are made)

<b>of</b> (when the original material is still visible)	<b>from</b> (when the original material has been transformed)	<b>with</b> (when we refer to a filling or an ingredient)
<i>The dress is made <b>of</b> silk.</i>	<i>Ice cream made <b>from</b> strawberries.</i>	<i>Vine leaves stuffed <b>with</b> rice.</i>

#### 4.4. What are they like?

<b>of</b> (age)	<b>with</b> (physical characteristics)	<b>in</b> (things we wear)	<b>with</b> (things we carry)
<i>She is a woman <b>of</b> about 25,</i>	<i><b>with</b> curly hair,</i>	<i><b>in</b> a white blouse,</i>	<i>and <b>with</b> a smart handbag.</i>

**Note:** Do not use 'years' or 'years old' after *of*.

#### 4.5. How? (When things or people are compared)

<b>between</b> (to differentiate)	<b>like</b> (to make a comparison)	<b>as</b> (to express sb's job or role)
<i>I can't tell the difference <b>between</b> butter and this spread.</i>	<i>She behaves <b>like</b> a director.</i>	<i>She acts <b>as</b> a director of the company.</i>

**Ex. 17.** Read the descriptions of three people wanted by the police in connection with a bank robbery. These descriptions were made by witnesses who saw the robbery. Complete each description with prepositions.

1. He was a man \_\_\_\_ about 20, \_\_\_\_ long dark hair, \_\_\_\_ jeans. He was wearing a mask made \_\_\_\_ a stocking, and he looked \_\_\_\_ a gangster. He broke the window \_\_\_\_ a brick, and escaped \_\_\_\_ a bicycle. It looked \_\_\_\_ a racing bike.

2. She was a woman \_\_\_\_ about 30, \_\_\_\_ curly fair hair, \_\_\_\_ a tracksuit, \_\_\_\_ a large handbag. She was wearing big round sunglasses. She followed the man into the broken window, and then escaped \_\_\_\_ a motorcycle. She drove that motorbike \_\_\_\_ a mad woman!

3. He was a man of about 50, \_\_\_\_ very little hair, \_\_\_\_ a dark suit. He looked \_\_\_\_ a businessman, and he covered his face \_\_\_\_ a newspaper. He was waiting for his mates outside the bank. When they got out, he drove off \_\_\_\_ a large, black car.

## 4.6

<b>because of/due to/owing to</b> (reason)	<b>through</b> (means)	<b>for</b> (purpose)
<i>He did it <b>due to</b> his love for her.</i>	<i>He achieves success <b>through</b> patience and hard work.</i>	<i>I want a knife that can be used <b>for</b> cutting bread.</i>

## 4.7

<b>from/out of</b> (cause or motive)	<b>by/with</b> (an instrument)	<b>by</b> (the agent/creator of smth)
<i>People die <b>from</b> starvation. They obeyed him <b>out of</b> fear rather than respect.</i>	<i>Negotiations were held <b>by</b> phone.</i>	<i>It is a painting <b>by</b> Van Gogh.</i>

## 4.8.

<b>about</b>	<b>with</b>	<b>without</b>
<i>This book is <b>about</b> Darwin.</i>	<i>I like to drink coffee <b>with</b> cream.</i>	<i>I can't drink tea <b>without</b> sugar.</i>

## 4.9.

<b>to</b> (somebody)	<b>for</b> (somebody)
Denotes a person towards whom the action is directed	Denotes a person for whose benefit the action is done
<i>He sent presents <b>to</b> the children. It was a message from the Emperor <b>to</b> his people. Give my best regards <b>to</b> your parents.</i>	<i>I've got a present <b>for</b> you. He left a message <b>for</b> Paul. It's an English course <b>for</b> foreign students.</i>

## 4.10.

<b>of</b>	
	1. Used to show what a part belongs to or comes from: <i>the back <b>of</b> the house; the last scene <b>of</b> the movie; the end <b>of</b> the day</i>
	2. Used to show who sth/sb belongs to or has a connection with: <i>a friend <b>of</b> Kate's; a favourite <b>of</b> mine; the responsibility <b>of</b> Pete</i>

	3. Used when talking about a feature or quality that sth has: <i>the cost <b>of</b> the meal; the beauty <b>of</b> the scenery; the length <b>of</b> the road</i>
	4. Used to show what group one or more things belong to: <i>some <b>of</b> the students; two <b>of</b> the guests; a member <b>of</b> the team</i>
	5. Used to show what type of substance or thing you are referring to, when talking about an amount: <i>a pound <b>of</b> sugar; millions <b>of</b> dollars; a bar <b>of</b> chocolate</i>
	6. Used to say what sth contains: <i>a cup <b>of</b> coffee; a packet <b>of</b> sweets</i>
	7. Used to say what type of things or people are in a group: <i>a herd <b>of</b> elephants; his circle <b>of</b> friends; a bunch <b>of</b> flowers</i>

**Ex. 18. Complete the sentences below with the appropriate prepositions. Consult the tables in 4.1–4.9.**

1. This exciting book was written \_\_\_\_\_ David Swan.
2. She decided to go and see their new house just \_\_\_\_\_ curiosity.
3. Though she's over 40, she still behaves \_\_\_\_\_ a child.
4. During hard times he had to work \_\_\_\_\_ a rubbish collector.
5. She could reach this high position \_\_\_\_\_ hard work and persistence.
6. I can't tell the difference \_\_\_\_\_ these two brands of coffee.
7. He managed to go through all the difficulties \_\_\_\_\_ the love of his dearest and nearest.
8. Her new coat was made \_\_\_\_\_ pure wool.
9. She made her pictures \_\_\_\_\_ rubbish collected in the litter bins.
10. This delicious drink is made \_\_\_\_\_ raspberries, grapes and lemons.
11. It was a smart boy \_\_\_\_\_ 3, \_\_\_\_\_ unusually big blue eyes and curly blond hair.
12. Nobody could tell the difference \_\_\_\_\_ the twins, they were very much alike.
13. The information was delivered \_\_\_\_\_ the Internet.
14. This gadget can be used \_\_\_\_\_ switching on and off the electric heater when you are out.
15. Today, hundreds of children die \_\_\_\_\_ starvation in some African countries.
16. These chairs are \_\_\_\_\_ the senior citizens.
17. "What can I do \_\_\_\_\_ you?" the shop assistant asked the customer.
17. He whispered something \_\_\_\_\_ the girl beside him.
18. Don't show these letters \_\_\_\_\_ anyone else.
19. I sent a postcard \_\_\_\_\_ my mother on her birthday.

**Ex.19. Choose the correct words in italics.**

**A. A Disastrous Holiday**

The day Gerald arrived *in/at* the Golden Beach Hotel, he fell *down/up* the stairs. The manager called an ambulance, but fortunately Gerald's leg was only badly hurt, and not

broken. The doctor recommended swimming *as/like* further treatment but gave Gerald a prescription for some tablets in case his leg became painful. The next day Gerald sunbathed *by/in* the pool, and then took a deep breath and dived *in/into* the water. There was not very much water *in/into* the pool, and he hurt one *of/from* his arms when he hit the bottom. This time he complained to the hotel manager, who sent a special meal to Gerald's room. *At/During* the night, Gerald was suffering from a sunburned back, the injuries to his arm and leg, and also had a terrible stomachache. He had a high temperature and felt terrible. Luckily he had the tablets the doctor had given him to reduce the pain. As the tablets were *on/at* the table *by/of* his bed, he had to reach for them and fell out *of/before* bed and broke his wrist. He spent the rest of his holiday *in/on* bed.

### B. A Modern Robinson Crusoe

*After/Before* a collision *between/among* two ships *in/on* the Atlantic, Alan Connaught *from/off* Dundee ended up unexpectedly living *in/on* a desert island. 'I fell overboard and no-one noticed. A few hours later I found myself lying exhausted *at/on* a beach *after/before* swimming *for/during* miles. It was freezing too, not warm and sunny, *as/like* Crusoe's island. The only solution I could find was to dig a hole *in/on* the sand *as/like* a shelter.'

*After/Before* an improvement in the weather, Alan waited to be rescued. 'There was little food and no fresh water. It was an unhealthy life, and I felt ill most *of/from* the time. I suffered from loneliness too, but then I found a village *in/on* the other side of the island!' he said. 'The people had moved there *after/before* the destruction *of/on* their homes *by/from* the volcano. Luckily they had a radio *in/on* their village, and a ship soon came to rescue me.'

### C. Pets

If you decide to buy a pet, you should find out as much as possible *about/of* the pet you choose. Cats are easy to look after and seem to be independent, but also need a company *of/from* people. If your cat finds someone who cares for it more than you do, it will change owners! A small puppy may look *as/like* a suitable pet, but don't forget that it will grow up. You may not be able to put up with a very large dog that is too big *for/at* its kennel and which insists on sleeping *on/off* your bed! Unless you train it, it may attack people, or bark loudly day and night. Nobody loves a disobedient pet. Perhaps this is why so many people prefer birds or fish *as/like* pets. Whatever you decide in the end, think carefully *after/before* you make a decision.

### D. A Pet Parrot

*From/At* early childhood Jane had always wanted a pet parrot. Her parents told her that a parrot was an unsuitable pet, but Jane insisted. She was worried about the destruction *of/on* rainforests where parrots live, and she felt that parrots needed more protection. Her father argued that a parrot would suffer from loneliness if it lived *in/by* a house. He also

explained that pet parrots are caught *by/with* hunters, who need money and don't care about protecting species. 'They catch the parrots and send them *to/into* Europe *in/on* wooden boxes,' he told her. And in any case, parrots are very disobedient and don't make good pets.' Jane soon made an interesting discovery, however. She found a pet shop which bred parrots instead of importing them. She took all her savings and went *to/into* that shop, and bought a tiny S. American parrot, which she called 'Pixie'.

## 5. DEPENDENT PREPOSITIONS

### 5.1. ADJECTIVES + PREPOSITIONS

#### 5.1.1

<i>good/kind etc to</i> (a person)	<i>good/kind etc about</i> (an event or situation)	<i>It was good/kind etc of him to do it.</i>
------------------------------------	---	--

**Ex.20. Complete the text below with *to*, *about*.**

He used to be rude \_\_\_\_ his colleagues, but now he's so polite \_\_\_\_ them. He used to be nasty \_\_\_\_ his secretary's way of making coffee, but now he's nice \_\_\_\_ it. He used to be mean \_\_\_\_ his housemaid, but now he's generous \_\_\_\_ her. In fact, he used to be unpleasant \_\_\_\_ everybody and \_\_\_\_ everything, but now he's pleasant \_\_\_\_ everybody and \_\_\_\_ everything. Everybody wonders what's happened to him. The answer is simple – he's fallen in love!

#### 5.1.2

<i>pleased, careful/careless, angry, patient/impatient</i>	<i>right, wrong, sorry, worried</i>
<b>with</b> (people or things)	<b>about</b> (events or situations)
	<b>about</b> (people, things, events, or situations)

**Notes.** *I'm sorry about your father* (= I'm sorry that he has died).

*I'm sorry for your father* (= I pity him because you treated him badly).

**Ex.21. Complete the sentences below with *about* or *with*.**

1. My new computer is really good. I'm very pleased \_\_\_\_ it.
2. She was sorry \_\_\_\_ her little brother, who had hurt himself badly.
3. He has lost the last game and he is very angry \_\_\_\_ that.
4. He won a match today. He's very pleased \_\_\_\_ it.
5. His big match is tomorrow. He's not worried \_\_\_\_ it.
6. You said that the new project was nice. You were right \_\_\_\_ it.



7. When she worked with small children, she was very patient \_\_\_\_ them.  
 8. I've made several mistakes in my English test, so I'm going to be very careful \_\_\_\_ my grammar.  
 9. Our first coach used to shout at us. He was very impatient \_\_\_\_ us.  
 10. Only later did he realise how wrong she was \_\_\_\_ her former teacher.

### 5.1.3.

<i>bad, good, quick, slow, clever, efficient</i>	<i>afraid, fond, proud, sure, tired</i>	<i>interested, qualified</i>	<i>keen</i>
<b>at</b>	<b>of</b>	<b>in</b>	<b>on</b>

#### Examples.

1. She's good **at** arithmetic but slow **at** algebra. He's good **at** swimming and running.
2. I'm afraid **of** dogs, but I'm not afraid **of** cats.
3. He's interested **in** computers and qualified **in** mathematics. He's interested **in** helping other people.
4. She's keen **on** sport. She really likes it. We're keen **on** working with computers.

### Ex.22. Complete the letter below with **at**, **of**, **in** or **on**.

Dear Lucy,

Mary and I can canoe now! At last! So we're very proud \_\_\_\_ ourselves. Canoeing is a great sport, especially in a river full of rocks! Of course, we are not very good \_\_\_\_ it yet, and at first we were really bad \_\_\_\_ it. We fell into the river at least ten times, I'm sure \_\_\_\_ that. I'm not afraid \_\_\_\_ the river, but I'm not keen \_\_\_\_ very cold water! Getting into the canoe was rather difficult too, but we're quite quick \_\_\_\_ that now. So we're enjoying ourselves, but we're rather tired \_\_\_\_ the rain here. It's been raining for three days.

Please write. I'll be interested \_\_\_\_ your news.

All the best,

Judy.

### 5.1.4

<i>bad, good</i>	<i>famous, responsible, grateful, sorry</i>	<i>capable, fond, proud, sure, tired</i>	<i>bored</i>
<b>for</b> + noun	<b>for</b> + noun/doing sth	<b>of</b> + noun/doing sth	<b>with</b> + noun/ doing sth

**Examples.**

1. I'm sorry **for** breaking this dish (= I apologise).
2. I'm sorry **for** the animals in the cage (= I pity them).
3. She's famous **for** her parties/**for** giving good parties.
4. Fruit is good **for** your health.
5. I'm capable **of** good work/**of** doing good work.
6. I was bored **with** the talk/**with** listening to the talk.

**Ex.23.** A hotel receptionist is talking about her work. Fill in the blanks with adjectives from the box below. Use each adjective only once.

*bored capable careful efficient good interested patient polite responsible tired*

You have to be quite \_\_\_\_\_ at speaking English, French, Spanish and German. You are \_\_\_\_\_ for the keys to the rooms, and you have to be \_\_\_\_\_ about writing down telephone messages exactly. Also, you must be really \_\_\_\_\_ at keeping the list of guests up to date. Some guests are not very easy or pleasant, but you have to be \_\_\_\_\_ with the difficult ones, you must at least seem to be \_\_\_\_\_ in their problems, and of course you must be \_\_\_\_\_ to all of them! Naturally, there are times when I get \_\_\_\_\_ of answering all their questions, and at the end of the day I sometimes feel quite \_\_\_\_\_ of screaming, but I never really get \_\_\_\_\_ with the work.

## 5.2. VERBS + PREPOSITIONS

### 5.2.1

<i>listen, speak/ talk, write, belong, happen</i>	<i>ask, pay, wait, look (=try to find)</i>	<i>look</i>	<i>look (= take care of)</i>	<i>speak/talk/write/complain (to sb), tell sb, think/dream</i>
<b>to</b>	<b>for</b>	<b>at</b>	<b>after</b>	<b>about (+ noun/ doing sth)</b>

**Ex.24.** Complete the story below with *about, for, after* or *to*.

I'm going to tell you \_\_\_\_ a terrible restaurant I went to the other day. To begin with, I had to wait twenty minutes \_\_\_\_ the waitress. When I asked her \_\_\_\_ the menu, she had to go and look \_\_\_\_ it; there was only one, and something had happened \_\_\_\_ it. Then, when I spoke \_\_\_\_ her she didn't listen \_\_\_\_ me, so she brought some cheese which I didn't want. I hadn't asked \_\_\_\_ it! The restaurant belongs \_\_\_\_ Sandra Smith, the TV cookery expert. I shall write \_\_\_\_ her. The waitress really should look \_\_\_\_ the customers better.

## 5.2.2

<i>laugh, smile, stare, point</i>	<i>wave</i>
<b>at</b> <i>First the children stared and pointed <b>at</b> the comedian, then they laughed <b>at</b> his jokes.</i>	<b>at/to</b> <i>The film star waved <b>at/to</b> the crowd.</i>
<i>shout, throw</i>	<i>shout, throw</i>
<b>at</b> (= angrily, wanting to hit sb or sth)	<b>to</b> (= wanting the other person to hear, or so that the other person could catch)
<i>They shouted <b>at</b> the thief and threw stones <b>at</b> him.</i>	<i>She shouted <b>to</b> me that I should catch the ball and threw it <b>to</b> me.</i>

Ex.25. Complete the sentences below with **at** or **to**.

1. The woman shouted \_\_\_\_ the small boy that he should stay off the road.
2. The boy's father was very angry, so he shouted \_\_\_\_ him.
3. When the villagers saw a wolf, they started to shout and throw stones \_\_\_\_ it.
4. When we saw that funny clown, we smiled \_\_\_\_ him.
5. When I saw my friend at the party, I waved \_\_\_\_ her and shouted 'Hello!' \_\_\_\_ her.
6. She stared \_\_\_\_ the stranger speechless and pointed \_\_\_\_ the door.
7. The old woman told the boy not to throw stones \_\_\_\_ the pigeons.
8. The boy was throwing bread \_\_\_\_ the ducks in the pond.

## 5.2.3

<i>apply, apologise <b>for</b></i>	<i>reply, look forward <b>to</b></i>	<i>hear <b>from</b></i>	<i>consist <b>of</b></i>
<i>I apologise <b>for</b> him I apologise <b>for</b> being late</i>	<i>We usually reply <b>to</b> people's letters</i>	<i>I haven't heard <b>from</b> my best friend for days.</i>	<i>The book consists <b>of</b> ten chapters. My job consists <b>of</b> teaching teachers to teach English.</i>

## 5.2.4

<i>to be employed/qualified/involved</i>	
<b>in</b> (+ noun or doing something)	<b>as</b> (role or position)

**Example.** *He's employed in the oil industry **as** an engineer.*

**Ex. 26.** A music school put up an advertisement about vacancies for some jobs during the coming spring holiday. Complete the letter of application below with *for, as, from, of, in* or *to*.

Dear Sir,

I would like to apply \_\_\_\_ the job of spring holiday helper, which you advertised recently. I apologise \_\_\_\_ applying rather late. When I telephoned \_\_\_\_ your secretary, she said I could still apply.

I am not employed \_\_\_\_ teaching, but I'm qualified \_\_\_\_ an advanced guitar player (Grade 8) and I'm involved \_\_\_\_ teaching the guitar \_\_\_\_ a helper in a youth club. My work \_\_\_\_ the youth club consists \_\_\_\_ helping the staff generally and some teaching.

I hope you will be interested \_\_\_\_ my application, and am looking forward \_\_\_\_ hearing \_\_\_\_ you.

Yours faithfully,

Janet Blake.

### 5.2.5.

concentrate decide depend rely insist work	<b>on</b>	+ noun + doing sth	She was concentrating <b>on</b> her book/ <b>on</b> reading her book. They were working <b>on</b> the car/ <b>on</b> getting the car ready. I insist <b>on</b> going there together. I wouldn't rely <b>on</b> his information.
---	-----------	-----------------------	--

### 5.2.6.

Verb	Preposition	Object
invite sb	<b>to</b>	+ noun
provide sb	<b>with</b>	
borrow sth	<b>from</b>	
accuse sb	<b>of</b>	+ noun + (not) doing
blame sb/sth	<b>for</b>	
congratulate sb	<b>on</b>	
protect sb	<b>from</b>	
spend sth	<b>on</b>	
remind sb	<b>about</b>	
warn	<b>about</b>	

Ex.27. Complete the sentences below with prepositions from 5.2.6.

1. She borrowed a book \_\_\_\_ a friend.
2. They invited me \_\_\_\_ their party.
3. They accused him \_\_\_\_ stealing the money.
4. I congratulate you \_\_\_\_ winning the race.

5. He warned us \_\_\_\_ the danger of walking along that old bridge.
6. This house reminds me \_\_\_\_ my home.
7. They reminded her \_\_\_\_ not leaving her bag in the car.
8. They warned us \_\_\_\_ swimming near the rocks.
9. I usually spend a lot of time \_\_\_\_ doing my homework.
10. My father tried to protect me \_\_\_\_ making another mistake.
11. You can't accuse me \_\_\_\_ being lazy! I've done my best.
12. You'll need a crash helmet to protect you \_\_\_\_ falling stones.

### 5.2.7

<i>to be</i>	<i>to go; to come</i>
<b>at</b> work/school/college/university <b>at</b> home <b>in/at</b> church <b>in</b> hospital <b>in</b> bed	<b>to</b> work/school/college/university/ church/ bed; <b>to/into</b> hospital But: <i>to go/come home</i>

#### Examples:

He's **at** work today, although it's a holiday.

My sister is going **to** college next year.

The children are **in** bed. They went **to** bed early.

Father is **at** home. He came home a few minutes ago.

[**Note:** With all the words above (except work) we use *the* or *a* if we are referring to a particular school, church, bed etc: He was in **the** bed by the window./A doctor in **the** hospital spoke to us./Father went to **the** home of some friends.]

### 5.2.8

<i>to have (sth)</i>	<i>to be/go etc</i>	<i>to be/speak etc</i>	<i>to go/come</i>
<b>for</b> breakfast/ lunch, etc	<b>on</b> holiday/ business	<b>on</b> the phone/ the radio/TV	<b>for</b> a run/a swim

**Ex.28. Complete the sentences below with *in*, *on*, *to* or *at*, or write a dash, if you don't need any preposition.**

1. My brother's still \_\_\_\_ school, but he wants to go \_\_\_\_ college when he's eighteen.
2. I'm \_\_\_\_ university now. I'm \_\_\_\_ a university in the west of England.
3. There are jobs \_\_\_\_ the hospital near my home.
4. What did you most like \_\_\_\_ school?

5. I'm going \_\_\_\_ church tomorrow. I'd like to go \_\_\_\_ a church where the singing is really good.
6. After his football incident he had to go \_\_\_\_ hospital for while. He was \_\_\_\_ the hospital for three days, and then he spent another week \_\_\_\_ bed \_\_\_\_ home.
7. She can't speak to you now. She's not \_\_\_\_ work. She's away \_\_\_\_ a business trip.
8. We had porridge and eggs \_\_\_\_ breakfast.
9. Where would you most like to go \_\_\_\_ holiday?
10. I was speaking \_\_\_\_ the phone when I heard that awful noise.
11. It's so hot today. We'd like to go \_\_\_\_ a swim.
12. You'll see him \_\_\_\_ TV tomorrow, and he'll have an interview \_\_\_\_ the radio on Monday.
13. We usually go straight \_\_\_\_ home when the lessons \_\_\_\_ school are over.
14. What would you most like to have \_\_\_\_ lunch or dinner on your birthday?
15. What do you usually do \_\_\_\_ home at weekends?
16. I usually go \_\_\_\_ a run in the morning to keep fit.
17. ' \_\_\_\_ Home/home alone' is a very funny comedy.
18. My parents go \_\_\_\_ church every Sunday.
19. When I entered the ward, I saw her lying \_\_\_\_ the bed with her eyes closed.
20. I heard that sad news \_\_\_\_ the radio yesterday.

### 5.3. NOUNS + PREPOSITIONS

#### 5.3.1.

<i>visit</i>	<i>plan, reason, need; talent; gift*</i>	<i>cause, result, way, cost/price; gift*</i>	<i>rise/increase, fall/ decrease</i>
<b>to</b>	<b>for</b>	<b>of</b>	<b>in</b>
<i>a visit <b>to</b> Africa/ <b>to</b> a doctor</i>	<i>plans <b>for</b> our holidays/<b>for</b> you prescription <b>for</b></i>	<i>the result <b>of</b> hard work/<b>of</b> working hard</i>	<i>the rise <b>in</b> prices, the decrease <b>in</b> the population</i>

**\*Notes.**

Gift **for** sth = as natural ability: He had a gift **for** languages.

Gift **of** sth/doing sth = an ability that is given to you by God: She was said to have possessed the gift **of** prophecy.

## 5.3.2

<i>book/letter, programme, talk/ lecture, advice/ideas</i>	<i>book, play, painting, drawing, song, symphony</i>
<b>on/about*</b> <i>a book <b>on/about</b> China; a book <b>on/about</b> travelling in China</i>	<b>by</b> <i>a book/play <b>by</b> Shakespeare a symphony <b>by</b> Mozart</i>

## \*Notes.

1. We usually use **on** for rather formal or specialised books, or when we are using a rather formal style of English.
2. We usually use **about** for more informal or general books, or when we are using a more informal style of English.

## 5.3.3.

<i>meeting</i>	<i>question, reply/answer</i>
<b>with:</b> <i>The staff had a meeting <b>with</b> their boss.</i>	<b>to sb about sth/doing</b>
<b>between:</b> <i>There was a meeting <b>between</b> the staff and their di- rector.</i>	<i>That was his question <b>to</b> her <b>about</b> the trip/ <b>about</b> planning the trip</i>
<b>of:</b> <i>There was a meeting <b>of</b> the new staff.</i>	

## Ex.29. Complete the texts below with prepositions from 5.3.1 and 5.3.3.

When I get back to London, I've got to attend a meeting \_\_\_\_ the Photographic Society; prepare plans \_\_\_\_ the Society's visit \_\_\_\_ Oxford; send the Tourist Board a letter \_\_\_\_ our visit; get some advice \_\_\_\_ transport; and find a good book \_\_\_\_ architectural photography. I'd also like to ask my colleagues \_\_\_\_ ideas \_\_\_\_ unusual buildings we can photograph. Besides, I'm going to watch a TV film \_\_\_\_ Oxford \_\_\_\_ a famous journalist, an Oxford graduate. And finally, I want to arrange a meeting \_\_\_\_ the University's Camera Club. All that will keep me busy!

Dear Sir,

This letter is in reply \_\_\_\_ your letter of 14 May. The reason \_\_\_\_ the rise \_\_\_\_ the cost \_\_\_\_ hiring a coach is the recent increase \_\_\_\_ the price \_\_\_\_ petrol. This increase, as you know, has been the result \_\_\_\_ problems in the oil industry.

We do understand the need \_\_\_\_ inexpensive transport for your society, and we feel sure that you will not find a cheaper way \_\_\_\_ taking your members to Oxford. Of course, if there is a fall \_\_\_\_ the price \_\_\_\_ petrol, there will be a decrease \_\_\_\_ our charge to you.

Yours faithfully,

Sam Watson

Comfort Coaches Ltd.

### 5.3.4

<i>difficulty; taste*</i>	<i>exception; attitude</i>	<i>fear; gift; taste*</i>	<i>authority</i>
<b>in</b>	<b>to</b>	<b>of</b>	<b>on</b>

#### \*Notes.

Taste **in** sth = ability to make good choices: Everybody admires her taste in clothes.

Taste **for** sth = the kind of things that sb likes: While she was in France she developed a taste for fine wines.

Taste **of** = the feeling that is produced by food or drink in your mouth: He could still feel that bitter taste of medicine in his mouth.

### Ex.30. Complete the sentences below with prepositions from 5.3.4:

1. There are many exceptions \_\_\_\_ the rule in English.
2. He had difficulty \_\_\_\_ starting the car.
3. Jack has terrible taste \_\_\_\_ clothes, which prevents him from finding a respectable job.
4. My brother's an authority \_\_\_\_ women.
5. I love the taste \_\_\_\_ this wine – it is very dry and has a nice fruity flavour.
6. She could still feel that awful taste \_\_\_\_ spoilt food in her mouth.
7. The fear \_\_\_\_ heights prevented her from going to the mountains.
8. They had great difficulty \_\_\_\_ finding a replacement.
9. I didn't think your attitude \_\_\_\_ foreigners was so negative.
10. Very many people have a fear \_\_\_\_ flying.

## 5.4 PREPOSITIONS + NOUNS

### 5.4.1

<b>in</b>	<b>under</b>	<b>out of</b>
<i>danger; love (with); a (good/bad) mood</i>	<i>control; age; the impression (that); the circumstances</i>	<i>danger; work; order; sight; mind; breath; stock</i>



**Examples:**

1. Most people are **in** love when they marry.
2. He has lost his job, and now **out of** work.
3. I dropped the telephone and now it's **out of** order.
4. **Out of** sight, **out of** mind.
5. He was **out of** breath after the long race.
6. I'm afraid we don't have your size, we are **out of** stock.
7. The police brought the shouting and fighting mob **under** control.
8. He didn't take part in the elections because he was **under** age.

**5.4.2**

<b>on</b>	<b>by</b>	<b>in</b>
<i>purpose; fire; mind; the air; (good) terms; my/your etc own;</i>	<i>mistake; surprise; coincidence; myself/ yourself etc</i>	<i>charge; a hurry; theory/practice; season</i>

**5.4.3**

<b>up to date</b> (= modern)	<b>out of date</b> (= not modern, no longer suitable)
---------------------------------	--

**5.4.4**

<b>for</b>	<b>without</b>
<i>fear (of sth/doing sth)</i>	<i>delay; doubt</i>

**5.4.5**

<b>on time</b>	<b>in time</b>
= at the correct time or the time that was arranged:	= before the time by which it is necessary for sth to be done:
<i>The plane arrived right <b>on</b> time.</i>	<i>Will you be able to finish it <b>in</b> time?</i>

**Ex. 31. Complete the sentences below with *by, in, on, under, up to* or *out of*.**

1. The Mona Liza is a painting \_\_\_\_ Leonardo da Vinci.
2. An unemployed person is \_\_\_\_ work.
3. I'm \_\_\_\_ a hurry to catch the last train to York.
4. She was \_\_\_\_ charge of the arrangements for the New Year party.
5. 'Yesterday' is a song \_\_\_\_ Lennon and McCartney.
6. If you want to find a new meaning of this word, you need to look it up \_\_\_\_ a dictionary.

7. I don't think I can pay the rent \_\_\_\_ myself – it's too high.
8. I was \_\_\_\_ love with one of my classmates when I was 15.
9. If a person has a temperature of 42, his/her life is \_\_\_\_ danger.
10. She would like to live \_\_\_\_ her own for some time.
11. If your computer is broken, it is \_\_\_\_ order.
12. I'm sorry! I certainly haven't bothered you \_\_\_\_ purpose.
13. I got the wrong number because the telephone directory was \_\_\_\_ date.
14. It's a good idea \_\_\_\_ theory, but I don't think it'll work \_\_\_\_ practice.
15. Don't talk to me at the moment. I'm \_\_\_\_ a bad mood.
16. The house was \_\_\_\_ fire, but the blaze was soon brought \_\_\_\_ control.
17. They wouldn't let him in the pub because he was \_\_\_\_ age.
18. We met at the hotel completely \_\_\_\_ coincidence.
19. We are \_\_\_\_ good terms with our neighbours.
20. I was \_\_\_\_ the impression that you liked Indian food.
21. \_\_\_\_ the circumstances, we won't press charges.
22. We walked on tiptoe \_\_\_\_ fear of being discovered.
23. I can't find any strawberries because they're not \_\_\_\_ season.
24. The policeman caught the thief \_\_\_\_ surprise.
25. Hello! This is WDEB Radio and you are \_\_\_\_ the air.

**Ex.32. Write the opposite of the expressions in italics. Fill in each blank with one word.**

1. Sue isn't *at home* today. She's \_\_\_\_.
2. There hasn't been a *rise* in the number of unemployed people. There has been a \_\_\_\_ the number.
3. You didn't do that *by mistake*! You did it \_\_\_\_.
4. She didn't go to Hawaii *on holiday*. She went \_\_\_\_.
5. Last month there was an *increase* in the price of fruit, but this month there has been a \_\_\_\_ the price.
6. This list of prices is *out of date*. I need a list that is \_\_\_\_.
7. I don't think you dropped the vase *by accident*. I think you did it \_\_\_\_.
8. You shouldn't wait *a second*. You'd go there \_\_\_\_.
9. I thought he was *over 21*. – No, he was still \_\_\_\_.
10. I thought you *were not getting on well* with each other. – On the contrary, we've been \_\_\_\_ for a long time.
11. He's *never late for* his classes. He always comes \_\_\_\_.
12. Don't worry! *We are never behind the schedule*. We'll finish our work \_\_\_\_.

## 6. FIXED PHRASES WITH PREPOSITIONS

### 6.1

in	<p><b>case (of)</b> (= if): 1. <b>In case</b> I'm late, start without me. 2. Press the button <b>in case of</b> emergency.</p> <p><b>favour of</b> (= support of sth): He spoke <b>in favour of</b> the proposal.</p> <p><b>common with</b> (= in the same way): We have much <b>in common</b>.</p> <p><b>turn</b> (= one after the other): They <b>in turn</b> described their results.</p> <p><b>fact</b>: He said it was cheap but <b>in fact</b> it was quite expensive.</p> <p><b>person</b>: You have to sign for it <b>in person</b>.</p> <p><b>detail</b>: He described the process <b>in detail</b>.</p> <p><b>pain</b>: You could tell he was <b>in pain</b> by the way he was groaning.</p> <p><b>general</b>: <b>In general</b>, all the graduates are eventually offered a job.</p> <p><b>particular</b> (= especially): It was a good concert – I enjoyed the last song <b>in particular</b>.</p> <p><b>tears</b> (= crying): Children were all <b>in tears</b>.</p> <p><b>private</b> (= without other people being present): I need to speak to you <b>in private</b>.</p>
----	--

### 6.2

on	by	for
<p>on behalf of; on sale; on loan on the whole; on average; on the contrary; on the verge of</p>	<p>by all means; by means of; by surprise; by heart; by sight; by force; by the way</p>	<p>for a change; for the time being; for life; not for long</p>

#### Examples.

1. The house at the end of the street is **on sale**.
2. **On average**, three of ten graduates receive jobs during the first year after graduation.
3. In the end he had to be thrown out of the house **by force**.
4. She was taken **by surprise** when her relatives turned up in their house on Christmas Eve.
5. Please keep quiet **for the time being**! I've got a terrible headache.

### 6.3.

at	under	from
<p>at times; at any rate; at all costs; at the end; at large; at first sight; at fault; at a discount</p>	<p>under the influence of; under the impression that... under suspicion; under stress under age</p>	<p>from force of habit; from time to time</p>

## 6.4

to	with	without
<i>to some/a great extent; (all) to yourself</i>	<i>with the exception of; with regard to; with a view to</i>	<i>without a chance; without a word; without exception</i>

## 6.5

after	out of
<i>after all</i>	<i>out of doors; out of focus; out of luck; out of reach; out of the ordinary</i>

## 6.6

within	beyond
<i>within the law; within reach; within sight; within earshot</i>	<i>beyond reach; beyond recognition; beyond repair; beyond control</i>

**Ex. 33. Underline the correct word in each sentence.**

1. Diane showed a complete disregard *for/with* her own safety.
2. For Romeo and Juliet it was love *with/at* first sight.
3. They wouldn't let me in the pub because I was *below/under* age.
4. This is one of the exceptions *of/to* the rule
5. Our house has been *in/on* the market for months.
6. We walked on tiptoe *for/from* fear of being discovered.
7. We appeared in the same place completely *by/from* coincidence.
8. You're perfectly capable *for/of* making your own bed.
9. *On/From* behalf of my colleagues I would like to thank you.
10. I was *by/under* the impression that you had accepted the offer.
11. *By/With* the exception of Sally everyone was exhausted.
12. The hotel is *in/within* reach of the station.

**Ex.34. Complete the sentences below with the correct phrase.**

1. I would like to thank you \_\_\_\_\_ everyone who was rescued.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ fire, smash the glass and push the button.
3. Personally, I am \_\_\_\_\_ banning cigarette smoking completely!
4. Jim managed to climb into the house \_\_\_\_\_ a ladder he found.

5. Jane has nothing \_\_\_\_\_ Julie. They are quite different.
6. This year we decided to take a holiday in Wales \_\_\_\_\_.
7. John learnt his first speech \_\_\_\_\_.
8. Why don't you share the bike? You can't ride it \_\_\_\_\_.
9. I suppose I enjoyed my holiday \_\_\_\_\_ [in general].
10. This is very important. You must catch the two men \_\_\_\_\_.
11. It was the first time I'd had a room all \_\_\_\_\_.
12. \_\_\_\_\_ I had to consult my notes when I was doing the test.
13. I prefer to spend most of my time \_\_\_\_\_. I like fresh air!
14. She's changed \_\_\_\_\_. She's quite a new person now!
15. He didn't really mean to do it. He acted so \_\_\_\_\_.

### 6.7. Noun collocations + of.

We often use of to link two nouns.

Here are some common **noun + of + noun** collocations:

<i>a kind/type/sort of + person/thing</i> <i>life of leisure/crime/poverty/luxury</i> <i>matter of principle/course/opinion/time</i> <i>matter of life or death</i> <i>point of departure/order/principle/reference/view</i> <i>point of no return</i> <i>price of success/fame/gold/food</i> <i>sign of trouble/success/the times</i> <i>time of year/day/the month/your life/life</i> <i>choice of career/books</i> <i>course of action/treatment</i>	<i>balance of power</i> <i>break of day</i> <i>cost of living</i> <i>language of love</i> <i>standard of living</i> <i>train of thought</i> <i>crack of dawn/thunder</i> <i>waste of time</i> <i>lapse of memory</i> <i>offer of help</i>
---	--

**Ex.35. Complete each sentence by using a word from Box A and a word from Box B joined with *of*.**

A	B
lapse	day
matter	fame
train	help
offer	love
crack	trouble
point	memory
price	opinion
sign	success
time	time
waste	view
sign	dawn
language	thought

- One \_\_\_\_\_ is having the freedom to make choices.
- My \_\_\_\_\_ is that all great literature appeals to the emotions.
- It's a \_\_\_\_\_ trying to attract his attention – he's too busy signing books!
- The \_\_\_\_\_ is the loss of anonymity.
- Thanks for your \_\_\_\_\_ but I've sorted the problem out now.
- My grandmother has the occasional \_\_\_\_\_ now she's nearly 90.
- What \_\_\_\_\_ do you find is the best for you to work productively?
- It's a \_\_\_\_\_ whether e-readers are more convenient than books.
- I'm afraid that phone call made me completely lose my \_\_\_\_\_.
- At the \_\_\_\_\_, they broke camp and set off for the distant mountains.
- According to the news reports, there was no \_\_\_\_\_ after the football match.
- French is the \_\_\_\_\_, they say.

### MIXED PRACTICE

**Ex.36. Fill in the correct preposition.**

- She has a talent \_\_\_\_ music so we try to encourage her as much as possible.
- Why do you waste so much money \_\_\_\_ phone calls?
- My season ticket was valid \_\_\_\_ three months, so I don't have to renew it until February.
- My student card gives me a 10 % discount, but it is only valid \_\_\_\_ certain shops.
- I like to spend my money \_\_\_\_ clothes and foreign holidays.

6. Peter has terrible taste \_\_\_\_ clothes. He wears flowery shirts with green and orange striped jeans.
7. I love the taste \_\_\_\_ this wine – it is very dry and has a nice fruity flavour.
8. You should not worry \_\_\_\_ your exam results. After all, there's nothing you can do now to change them.
9. I was tired \_\_\_\_ walking such a long distance.
10. I'm tired \_\_\_\_ listening to you moaning about him all the time.
11. I feel obliged to be nice \_\_\_\_ Jack because he's given me so much help.
12. I tried to warn you \_\_\_\_ him but you wouldn't listen.
13. Your dress is really similar \_\_\_\_ the one I just bought!
14. If you don't stop teasing me, I'll throw this book \_\_\_\_ you.
15. If you throw the fish \_\_\_\_ the seals, they are sure to come to eat them.
16. You shouldn't let yourself get upset \_\_\_\_ such silly things.
17. Are you going away \_\_\_\_ Easter or are you staying \_\_\_\_ home?
18. I met my husband \_\_\_\_ Wales. \_\_\_\_ that time I was working \_\_\_\_ a travel agent.
19. Generations of my family have lived \_\_\_\_ the same house \_\_\_\_ 1800.
20. We never see our cat. \_\_\_\_ the day it sleeps, and it goes out \_\_\_\_ night.

**Ex.37. Write the correct prepositions in each gap.**

**A. Home sweet home**

Some people are indifferent \_\_\_\_ their surroundings. They seem quite satisfied \_\_\_\_ simply having a roof \_\_\_\_ their head and being safe \_\_\_\_ the elements. My surroundings are very important \_\_\_\_ me, and I like to have any possessions arranged nicely \_\_\_\_ me. I have a reputation \_\_\_\_ being able to make any room \_\_\_\_ a home from home. Not that I'm obsessed \_\_\_\_ tidiness or own anything valuable. It's a question \_\_\_\_ being able to create a homely, comfortable atmosphere. Many people complement me \_\_\_\_ this. Once, however, I shared a flat \_\_\_\_ someone who was noted \_\_\_\_ his untidiness. He simply didn't care \_\_\_\_ his surroundings. He dropped ash \_\_\_\_ his cigarettes, doing untold damage \_\_\_\_ the carpet; he never made his bed, and there was no chance \_\_\_\_ his ever doing the washing up. The dishes stood \_\_\_\_ piles beside the sink. I tried to reason \_\_\_\_ him, but he always had an excuse \_\_\_\_ not doing anything. The only thing he was particular \_\_\_\_ was his appearance. He spent hours preening himself in front \_\_\_\_ the mirror. There is a limit \_\_\_\_ my patience. I am much happier living \_\_\_\_ my own again.

**B. Television and reading**

I pride myself \_\_\_\_ the fact that I read two or three books a week. \_\_\_\_ this rate I'll be familiar \_\_\_\_ every book \_\_\_\_ our local library soon.

I blame TV \_\_\_\_ the way people don't seem to read as much as they used to. \_\_\_\_ my way of thinking TV is responsible \_\_\_\_ many ills \_\_\_\_ our society.

I wonder \_\_\_\_ the amount of TV watched \_\_\_\_ my sister's children. I have warned her \_\_\_\_ the dangers of this but \_\_\_\_ vain. She refuses to get involved \_\_\_\_ a discussion \_\_\_\_ the subject.

\_\_\_\_ one time I used to watch a fair amount of TV but I restricted myself \_\_\_\_ particular programmes such as documentaries and an occasional good film. However, I soon grew tired \_\_\_\_ even this. I was indifferent \_\_\_\_ many of the topics in the documentaries and there is always something missing \_\_\_\_ films or TV plays which are based \_\_\_\_ the stories \_\_\_\_ books. However good the film, it is no substitute \_\_\_\_ the original story. At last I think I am beginning to convince my sister \_\_\_\_ the bad effect of TV \_\_\_\_ her children. She has agreed \_\_\_\_ my suggestion of selective viewing and \_\_\_\_ the beginning of each week her family agrees \_\_\_\_ which programmes they want to watch and the TV is only turned on \_\_\_\_ those times. It's taken a long time to get her to agree \_\_\_\_ me but I'm sure the schoolwork of my nephews and niece will benefit as a result.

### C

Most people are \_\_\_\_ the impression that doing something \_\_\_\_ mistake is quite different \_\_\_\_ doing something \_\_\_\_ purpose. \_\_\_\_ fact, according \_\_\_\_ some psychologists, many accidents do not, \_\_\_\_ the whole, really happen \_\_\_\_ chance. There may be good reasons \_\_\_\_ actions which seem to be accidental. \_\_\_\_ example, someone who fails to arrive on time \_\_\_\_ a meeting at work may be worried \_\_\_\_ his or her job, or be \_\_\_\_ difficulties \_\_\_\_ home. \_\_\_\_ other words, there are often good reasons \_\_\_\_ behaviour which seems \_\_\_\_ first to be accidental. Of course, some people are involved \_\_\_\_ more accidents than others. These people are called 'accident prone'. \_\_\_\_ general they either suffer \_\_\_\_ stress, or could have a physical illness \_\_\_\_ knowing about it.

### D

It never ceases to amaze me how little notice some people now take of rules \_\_\_\_ public places. When I was a child, it would never have occurred \_\_\_\_ me not to comply \_\_\_\_ rules. If someone smoked in defiance of a 'No Smoking' sign \_\_\_\_ a train, they would rapidly be reminded \_\_\_\_ their transgression \_\_\_\_ several irate passengers, who would refer the errant smoker \_\_\_\_ the sign in no uncertain terms. What's more, the person accused would normally apologise \_\_\_\_ his indiscretion, and would certainly refrain \_\_\_\_ repeating his anti-social behaviour. These days reminding someone \_\_\_\_ their public duty not to drop litter or swear on the streets is likely to succeed only \_\_\_\_ unleashing a torrent of verbal abuse \_\_\_\_ the wrongdoer. Many people seem blithely unaware that, \_\_\_\_ example, the 'silence \_\_\_\_ the library' rule applies \_\_\_\_ them, as much as \_\_\_\_ anyone else. Asking them is not enough, pleading \_\_\_\_ them might still not deter them \_\_\_\_ their noisy chat, resorting \_\_\_\_ physical violence, an undesirable option, seems the only one likely to get a result. But, in all seriousness, what really annoys me is that one is made to feel churlish or old-fashioned



just to insist \_\_\_\_ basic respect of everyday manners. Truly, it seems polite behaviour and good manners count \_\_\_\_ nothing in today's society.

**Ex.38. Choose the most suitable preposition:**

1. It was very good \_\_\_\_ you to help me with this homework  
a) for b) to c) with d) of
2. Nothing \_\_\_\_ the ordinary ever happens here.  
a) from b) out of c) about d) within
3. After running up the stairs I was quite \_\_\_\_ breath.  
a) out of b) from c) without d) beyond
4. Scott's equipment was spoilt \_\_\_\_ repair.  
a) out of b) beyond c) from d) within
5. Adjust the driver's seat so that all the controls are \_\_\_\_ reach.  
a) out of b) from c) within d) beyond
6. We are \_\_\_\_ no obligation to change goods which were not purchased here.  
a) beyond b) under c) in d) without
7. It seems to be your boss who is \_\_\_\_ fault in this case.  
a) at b) with c) without d) in
8. Tina is an authority \_\_\_\_ Byzantine architecture.  
a) at b) in c) on d) with
9. I guess Mary is \_\_\_\_ the verge of a nervous breakdown.  
a) on b) at c) in d) of
10. It's too late to phone Jill at work, \_\_\_\_ any rate.  
a) in b) by c) from d) at
11. How can Jane love Sam? They have nothing \_\_\_\_ common.  
a) at b) in c) by d) of
12. They should be here soon. They are \_\_\_\_ the way.  
a) in b) by c) on d) at
13. I would never have suspected Jim \_\_\_\_ being a criminal.  
a) of b) in c) with d) at
14. How did Sheila confess \_\_\_\_ the news of her marriage?  
a) in b) at c) to d) of
15. Don't worry about the lunch. I'll see \_\_\_\_ it.  
a) at b) about c) in d) to
16. More than two hundred police officers are involved \_\_\_\_ the investigation.  
a) with b) in c) at d) for

17. The trouble with Jean is that she is obsessed \_\_\_\_ sport!  
a) with b) about c) in d) of
18. Tony's parents decided that he couldn't be trusted \_\_\_\_ money.  
a) of b) by c) with d) about
19. They insisted \_\_\_\_ our staying for lunch.  
a) in b) about c) at d) on
20. Our thoughts are centered \_\_\_\_ our four missing colleagues.  
a) on b) with c) at d) in
21. Faced \_\_\_\_ the crisis, Sarah panics.  
a) in b) with c) by d) on
22. The lawyer was acquainted \_\_\_\_ the facts of the case.  
a) at b) of c) with d) by
23. The storm resulted \_\_\_\_ the deaths of over fifty people.  
a) in b) with c) by d) at
24. All the soldiers have been provided \_\_\_\_ winter equipment.  
a) by b) with c) for d) about
25. You haven't accounted \_\_\_\_ the disappearance of the money.  
a) by b) at c) for d) with
26. I wish you'd stop arguing \_\_\_\_ politics all the time.  
a) of b) about c) on d) for
27. Could you deal \_\_\_\_ this problem, I'm rather busy.  
a) with b) for c) to d) by

**Ex.39. Complete each sentence with one suitable preposition.**

1. I really prefer just anything \_\_\_\_ watching television.
2. This year's conference coincided \_\_\_\_ two other major events.
3. Is it possible to insure my bike \_\_\_\_ theft?
4. The problem stems \_\_\_\_ the government's lack of action.
5. When I asked Jane, she hinted \_\_\_\_ the chance of a promotion for me.
6. I pleaded \_\_\_\_ John to change his mind, but he wouldn't listen.
7. I can't stand the way she is always boasting \_\_\_\_ her wealthy parents.
8. My grandfather is always confusing Madonna \_\_\_\_ Maradona.
9. Could you please refrain \_\_\_\_ smoking in the lecture hall.
10. The idea of marriage doesn't appeal \_\_\_\_ me.
11. We succeeded \_\_\_\_ finding Ann's house at the second attempt.
12. However poor I was I would not resort \_\_\_\_ stealing.
13. Have you accounted \_\_\_\_ the wind speed in your calculations?
14. He confessed when he was confronted \_\_\_\_ the evidence.

15. Alan prides himself \_\_\_\_ his punctuality.
16. I was distracted \_\_\_\_ doing my work by the music.
17. I apologise \_\_\_\_ breaking your electric drill.
18. Tina paid \_\_\_\_ everyone's lunch yesterday.
19. I don't understand what this phrase refers \_\_\_\_.
20. Mary's new novel is based \_\_\_\_ a true story.
21. The bus was packed \_\_\_\_ people.
22. I dreamt \_\_\_\_ you last night.
23. This house reminds me \_\_\_\_ home!
24. Dan translated the book \_\_\_\_ French \_\_\_\_ English.
25. I associate Christmas \_\_\_\_ roast turkey.
26. I think you would benefit \_\_\_\_ a rest.
27. Everyone tried to blame Janet \_\_\_\_ the mistake.
28. When I retired, I devoted myself \_\_\_\_ improving my garden.
29. Mary specialises \_\_\_\_ designing theatres and concert halls.
30. On its first voyage, the Titanic met \_\_\_\_ disaster.
31. I ran all the way home. I was \_\_\_\_ breath when I got there.
32. I don't think you should have a cheeseburger if you are \_\_\_\_ a diet.
33. That watch you're wearing is identical \_\_\_\_ the one I bought last week.
34. It's not fair to blame Susie \_\_\_\_ breaking the vase.
35. Nick was attempting to dispose \_\_\_\_ a bag in a rubbish bin when a police officer approached him.
36. Tourists gathered \_\_\_\_ the statue as the guide began to talk about its finer points.
37. Maria still can't decide \_\_\_\_ which university to go to.
38. I've looked through your plans. I must say that my figures are \_\_\_\_ odds with yours.
39. You are required \_\_\_\_ law to wear your seatbelt.
40. The countries in the Middle East have often been \_\_\_\_ war with each other over the years.
41. Sarah's \_\_\_\_ a bad mood because she failed her exam.
42. This dress was quite cheap because I bought it \_\_\_\_ a discount.
43. Your assignment is to describe \_\_\_\_ detail England's role in World War II.
44. If you insist \_\_\_\_ going against their orders, you must be prepared to face the consequences.
45. She bought a house with a garden as she's very keen \_\_\_\_ gardening.
46. When I was at university, I lived \_\_\_\_ a student grant.
47. I am always being mistaken \_\_\_\_ my cousin.
48. She's notorious \_\_\_\_ telling incredible lies.
49. I didn't expect so many people to object \_\_\_\_ the scheme.
50. Most people are indifferent \_\_\_\_ the welfare of the homeless.

**Ex.40. Use each word in bold to make a new sentence similar in meaning to the original. Do not change the word in bold. There is an example (1) at the beginning.**

1. The smuggler was unable to throw away the drugs before being stopped at customs.  
(**dispose**)

*The smuggler was unable to **dispose** of the drugs before being stopped at customs.*

2. Rhonda has chosen The Grange Hotel for her wedding reception. (**decided**)

---

3. It may take many more years before they find a way to heal cancer patients. (**cure**)

---

4. You shouldn't smoke if you want to lead a healthier lifestyle. (**abstain**)

---

5. The dress she was wearing was the same as the one I bought in the Mall last month.  
(**identical**)

---

6. Joe should pay attention to his studies more if he hopes to pass his exams this year.  
(**concentrate**)

---

7. One more mistake will lead to the dismissal of the employees involved. (**result**)

---

8. It's not fair to hold the assistant responsible for failing the experiment. (**blame**)

---

9. The two countries have been fighting with each other for almost twenty years. (**war**)

---

10. The radio announcer spoke without realising that he was being heard by the listeners.  
(**air**)

---

11. Henry isn't allowed to drink alcohol because he's not old enough. (**age**)

---

12. I had difficulty breathing by the time I reached the top of the stairs. (**breath**)

---

13. The new law is only relevant to companies which employ disabled people. (**applies**)

---

14. They told the sportsman how happy they were that he had won the race.  
(**congratulate**)

---

15. You shouldn't eat too much chocolate if you are watching your weight. (**diet**)

---

16. Charlie is rather angry today because he was stuck in traffic for over an hour. (**mood**)

---

17. This document explains the new import regulations thoroughly. (**detail**)

---

## PHRASAL VERBS

When you read or hear a phrasal verb that you have never met before, try to guess its meaning. Does its particle help you to understand it? Can you guess its meaning from its context? It is also important to note down any common partnership that verbs form with nouns. This will help you to understand and remember the phrasal verbs you come across. Below are some of the meanings of the most common particles used with phrasal verbs. Study them and then do the exercises that follow.

### 7.1. PHRASAL VERB ORGANISER

#### 7.1.1. UP

- an upward movement: *We left early, just as the sun was **coming up**.*
- an increase, an improvement: *Sales have **gone up** in the past year.*
- completing, ending: *She **used up** all the eggs when we made the cake.*
- approaching: *The teacher **came up** and started talking to me.*

**Fill in the blanks with appropriate phrasal verbs that contain up.**

1. When her parents died in a car crash, the girl was \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ by her grandparents.
2. When the headmaster came in, the pupils \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_.
3. If you don't know the meaning of a word, \_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_ in your dictionary.
4. It's very difficult for many people to \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ early in winter.
5. The phone never stopped ringing as her friends kept \_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_ to congratulate her.
6. The car suddenly came towards us. It \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ in front of the store and two armed men got out.
7. \_\_\_\_ your overcoat! It's cold outside!
8. He managed to \_\_\_\_ appearances though he'd lost all his money.
9. A group of young men \_\_\_\_ the bank and stole a hundred thousand pounds.
10. Nobody expected her to \_\_\_\_ at the party.
11. At midnight the party \_\_\_\_ and we all went home.
12. The hotels were all full so we offered to \_\_\_\_ Andrew \_\_\_\_ for the night.
13. Early that morning, we set off on our journey as the sun was \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_.
14. You're such a good singer that you should \_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_ professionally.
15. Are you coming or not? Please \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ your mind!
16. We managed to escape before the factory \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ in flames.
17. Was the story true, or was she \_\_\_\_ it all \_\_\_\_?
18. Has she said anything about me? – Well, your name \_\_\_\_ in the course of conversation last night.

19. I'll have to \_\_\_\_ my job and look after my mother.  
 20. Prices will \_\_\_\_ in the New Year.

### 7.1.2. DOWN

- a downward movement: *The teacher told the pupils to **sit down**.*
- a decrease, reduction: *The music is too loud! **Turn it down**!*
- completing, ending stopping: *Business was so bad that the shop had to **close down**.*
- recording something in writing: ***Write down** my address, please.*
- defeat, suppression: *The army was called in to **put down** the rebellion.*

**Fill in the blanks with appropriate phrasal verbs that contain down.**

1. If you \_\_\_\_ the offer or a job, you say you don't want it.
2. If you can't give up smoking entirely, at least try to \_\_\_\_.
3. The church tower was damaged in the storm and a week later, it \_\_\_\_.
4. She was \_\_\_\_ by a lorry while crossing the road.
5. Why don't you \_\_\_\_ his phone number? You may forget it.
6. Don't worry! I won't \_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_.
7. The car \_\_\_\_ on the journey home.
8. The Opposition parties hope the scandal will \_\_\_\_ the President and his government.
9. It's a bit chilly in here. They've \_\_\_\_ the heating.
10. The boss doesn't criticize other people like that. Why does he have to \_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_ all the time?
11. The government is doing its best to \_\_\_\_ the cost of houses so that more people can afford to buy a home of their own.
12. We've spent hours putting up all the decorations. When the party's over, we'll have to \_\_\_\_ them all \_\_\_\_ again.
13. I had to \_\_\_\_ the dress because it was too short.
14. Many people \_\_\_\_ because of the pressure of their work.
15. The committee had very strong feelings about the kind of person who wasn't acceptable. They \_\_\_\_ any applicant who was wearing jeans, for example.
16. If the batteries break down, the radio won't work as well.
17. The Government is doing its best to \_\_\_\_ taxes as much as possible.
18. You can't \_\_\_\_ all the people who are relying on you.
19. Don't let these problems \_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_ so much!
20. The houses will \_\_\_\_ eventually if they aren't repaired.

### 7.1.3. OUT

- an outward movement: *I'm bored. Let's **go out** tonight.*
- excluding: *After two years at university he decided to **drop out**.*
- completing, doing thoroughly: *They're going to **carry out** a survey on children's eating habits.*
- something stopping completely: *This species of bird **died out** in the 19th century.*

**Fill in the blanks with appropriate phrasal verbs that contain out.**

1. If you want to lose weight, you'll have to \_\_\_\_ everything sweet.
2. There were guards at the front of the building to \_\_\_\_ any protestors.
3. \_\_\_\_! There's a car coming!
4. A car suddenly \_\_\_\_ in front of mine and I ran into the back of it.
5. If we \_\_\_\_ early, we'll avoid the rush hour.
6. It was so smoky and stuffy in the room that I nearly \_\_\_\_.
7. Before the teacher \_\_\_\_ the answer sheets, she gave us all necessary instructions.
8. The prisoners \_\_\_\_ by using an axe to smash the door.
9. The two friends \_\_\_\_ and never spoke to each other again.
10. It's a very bad stain. Are you sure this stuff will make it \_\_\_\_?
11. Every week this factory \_\_\_\_ 2,000 new cars.
12. It was too dark for me to \_\_\_\_ the numbers of the car that bumped into us.
13. Despite all the problems we'd had, the event \_\_\_\_ to be a great success.
14. As I had put on weight, my dress was too tight so I had to \_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_.
15. He was a very shy boy. He didn't \_\_\_\_ with girls until he had left school.
16. We need some water to \_\_\_\_ the fire.
17. I would love to \_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_ for a really expensive meal!
18. My strength was starting to \_\_\_\_ when help finally arrived.
19. We've had to \_\_\_\_ the police twice this week.
20. We intend to \_\_\_\_ a survey into the most popular hobbies among citizens.

### 7.1.4. IN/INTO

- an inward movement: *The spectators **poured into** the stadium.*
- including, being involved: *We'd better **let them into** the secret.*
- installing something: *We decided to have a new bathroom **put in**.*
- persuading, forcing someone to do something: *She **talked me into** buying a new coat.*

**Fill in the blanks with appropriate phrasal verbs that contain in/into.**

1. Do you think she'll \_\_\_\_ more money \_\_\_\_ the business?
2. They didn't \_\_\_\_ any details of the accident.

3. When you \_\_\_\_ someone \_\_\_\_ a room, you go with them into the room to make sure they get there.
4. When the police \_\_\_\_ a crime, they investigate it.
5. I'll \_\_\_\_ at the photographer's on the way home and take the photos.
6. This is an exclusive club. They won't \_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_ unless you're wearing a tie.
7. I know you're tired but don't \_\_\_\_ now. We're nearly there.
8. I didn't have time to finish my homework last night. – Well, make sure you \_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_ by tomorrow afternoon at the latest!
9. We've been driving for hours and I'm starving! – OK. I'll \_\_\_\_ at the next service station and we can have a bite to eat.
10. The old woman had nowhere to sleep so we decided to \_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_ for the night.
11. Everyone expected the jury to \_\_\_\_ a verdict of "not guilty".
12. I'll \_\_\_\_ on the way to town and see if there's any shopping she wants me to get.
13. The thieves \_\_\_\_, but the only thing they took was the video.
14. The train leaves Perth at 7 and \_\_\_\_ at 8.30.
15. The salesman's story sounded so convincing that we were completely \_\_\_\_.
16. Could I just \_\_\_\_ for a moment to find out how many of you would like coffee?
17. Tourism \_\_\_\_ over five million pounds every year.
18. We didn't expect her to \_\_\_\_ first.
19. Keep going! Don't \_\_\_\_ now! You've nearly finished!
20. It's warmer since we \_\_\_\_ central heating.
21. \_\_\_\_ Tom \_\_\_\_? – No, he's out at the moment. He'll be back in an hour.
22. "Never, ever \_\_\_\_ to terrorists!" was Margaret Thatcher's motto.

### 7.1.5. OFF

- movement away, detaching: *We **set off** at midday.*
- preventing entry, separating, not including: *I went to the railway station to **see her off**.*
- starting an explosive or violent reaction: *The bomb **went off** without warning.*

**Fill in the blanks with appropriate phrasal verbs that contain off.**

1. The bomb was \_\_\_\_ by remote control from a safe distance.
2. We were chatting on the phone when we were suddenly \_\_\_\_.
3. When Kate came home late, her mother was very angry and \_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_.
4. My ex-girlfriend was the one who \_\_\_\_ our relationship, not me!
5. As my sister was going to be away for a long time, we all went to \_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_.
6. We decided to \_\_\_\_ the meeting as so many people were away.
7. The box was \_\_\_\_ a strange smell which made me feel ill.
8. You have to \_\_\_\_ at the next stop.
9. You can \_\_\_\_ your jacket if you like.



10. The plane is due to \_\_\_\_ in a few minutes.
11. The judge \_\_\_\_ him \_\_\_\_ with just a fine.
12. You have to \_\_\_\_ the main road by the pub and go down a narrow lane until you get to a farm.
13. Be careful not to \_\_\_\_ the burglar alarm by accident. It makes a terrible noise!
14. Don't be \_\_\_\_ by the noise – it will soon get quieter.
15. The meeting has been \_\_\_\_ until Friday.
16. He might \_\_\_\_ if he walks along the top of the wall.
17. Shall I \_\_\_\_ a piece of chocolate and give it to him?
18. The town was \_\_\_\_ by an avalanche.
19. The cheese will \_\_\_\_ unless you eat it soon.
20. Will the teacher \_\_\_\_ her \_\_\_\_ doing her homework?

### 7.1.6. ON

- touching, attaching: *I wish you wouldn't **put on** so much lipstick.*
- making something (light, machine etc) operate: ***Turn on** the TV set, please.*
- being broadcast: *What time **is** "Star Trek" **on**?*
- continuing: *He **went on** talking as if nothing had happened.*

**Fill in the blanks with appropriate phrasal verbs that contain on.**

1. What do you think of this new dance? – It's a bit strange. I don't think it'll \_\_\_\_.
2. I think they \_\_\_\_ me as a typical housewife.
3. We haven't got enough information to \_\_\_\_, but we'll do our best.
4. There's a terrific atmosphere at work. All the staff \_\_\_\_ really well.
5. I wish Thomas wouldn't \_\_\_\_ criticizing me all the time.
6. The dog hadn't been at all aggressive so I didn't expect it to \_\_\_\_ me and attack me like that.
7. Do you have to \_\_\_\_ special make-up when you appear on television?
8. In his speech the boss said that he needed everyone's help. He \_\_\_\_ all his employees to do their best to increase sales.
9. I need a break. I realize now that I've \_\_\_\_ too much work.
10. Don't stop. Please \_\_\_\_ and tell us what happened next.
11. One of their salesmen \_\_\_\_ me yesterday but I told him I wasn't really interested.
12. It was a terrible film! – Oh, \_\_\_\_! It wasn't that bad!
13. The plane landed at Frankfurt to \_\_\_\_ more passengers.
14. How old is your uncle? – He's \_\_\_\_ a bit now. He must be at least eighty.
15. I ate too much during my holiday and \_\_\_\_ quite a lot of weight.
16. \_\_\_\_ the hot water, will you? I think I'll have a bath.
17. We've had to \_\_\_\_ more staff to meet the demand.

18. Could you \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ her on your way home?
19. The scouts are going to \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ a show.
20. Why do you \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ phoning her all the time?
21. The new fashion didn't \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ as the journalists had predicted.
22. Once you \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_, it is quite easy to understand.
23. I'm afraid it's very easy to \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ this disease.
24. I hope this warm weather doesn't \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ my hay fever.
25. She could only \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ in horror as the fire spread/

### 7.1.7. AWAY

- movement away: *'Go away!' she said to him and burst into tears.*
- disappearance, removal: *The noise **died away** as the audience settled down.*

**Fill in the blanks with appropriate phrasal verbs that contain away.**

1. When she doesn't need some of her clothes, she \_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_ to charity shops.
2. I always miss my dad when he \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ on business in some distant country.
3. When I was in London last time, I often \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ food from the nearest MacDonald's.
4. Unfortunately young people tend to \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ from old traditions.
5. They say they are \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ free glasses with every bottle of wine.
6. The woman \_\_\_\_ her neighbour's husband \_\_\_\_ to the locals police.
7. Will you \_\_\_\_ all your things \_\_\_\_! We're expecting some guests tonight.
8. The burglars managed to \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ with all our jewelry before the police arrived.
9. The pain started to \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ only after the nurse gave me some sedative.
10. The working people of the country at last decided to \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ with that reactionary regime.
11. The hostess warned me to \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ from that dog saying that it could bite me.
12. Jim finished his homework, \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ the books and went out.
13. After the interview, the manager decided to \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ all the applicants as none of them suited the job.
14. A member of the royal family \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ at the age of 98.
15. When the police arrived, two of the criminals had \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ leaving their wounded mate on the ground.
16. She advised me to look through an old magazine to \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ the time.
17. Very few people tend to \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ enough money for their retirement.
18. The criminal made up his mind to \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ with the witness not to be caught.
19. "\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ and get out of my life!" she cried out and burst into tears.
20. How can he \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ with treating her like that?

### 7.1. 8. BACK

- returning: *I've **given back** the books I borrowed.*
- reference to past time: *This photo **brings back** memories of when I was young.*

**Fill in the blanks with appropriate phrasal verbs that contain back.**

1. I had no difficulty taking the engine apart. \_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_ together was a problem, though.
2. I've changed my mind. Simon's quite nice, really. I \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ what I said.
3. The attack was so fierce that the soldiers had to \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_.
4. My neighbour has finally \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ the tools he borrowed!
5. The road was blocked so we \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ and looked for another route.
6. \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ we realize the cause of the disagreement in the family.
7. Trying to cope with the problem at work, she decided to \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ on her previous experience.
8. Everybody understood that she was \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ some important facts.
9. Dad leaped to his feet and glared at me, "You will \_\_\_\_ that remark \_\_\_\_ and apologise immediately!" he roared.
10. They always \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ on their old slogans.
11. The good weather seems to be \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ at last.
12. Most people \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ on their schooldays with fondness.
13. I \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ everything I said about Jim being lazy.
14. We decided to \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ to Scotland for another holiday.
15. Officials may \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ anyone who does not have the correct documents.
16. I'll \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ later and see how you are.
17. He was away and nobody knew when he would \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_.
18. Those old photos \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ the memories of childhood.

### 7.1.9. THROUGH

- completing, doing thoroughly: *I need to **think this through** before I decide.*
- cutting or breaking: *One of the angry citizens **broke through** the barrier and tried to reach the President.*
- reading something in order to find information: *I had to **go through** my notes to refresh my memory.*

**Fill in the blanks with appropriate phrasal verbs that contain through.**

1. Hurry up! We must \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ with our work before the director arrives.
2. After a few hours the rescue group finally \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ and saved the tourists.
3. I really want to \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ this difficult translation as soon as possible. Will you help me?
4. I've just been \_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_ your cookbooks for inspiration.

5. It was reported that the message about the dangers of this unknown disease wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ to the local population.
6. He was \_\_\_\_\_ a series of tests to discover what was wrong with him.
7. What a pity! Our new project has \_\_\_\_\_.
8. I'll \_\_\_\_\_ these files and see if I can find a copy of the letter.
9. Life is too tough for them! We can't really imagine what they're \_\_\_\_\_.
10. The switchboard operator refused to \_\_\_\_\_ the call \_\_\_\_\_.
11. The bill is currently \_\_\_\_\_ Parliament.
12. A group of young demonstrators attempted to \_\_\_\_\_ police lines.
13. He'd \_\_\_\_\_ all his money by the end of the first week.
14. Sunshine was \_\_\_\_\_ the clouds.
15. The proposals \_\_\_\_\_ after a second vote.

## 7.2. PHRASAL VERBS REVIEW

### 7.2.1. Choose the most suitable words in bold.

#### A

1. David broke **away/down/off** and wept when he heard the news.
2. The party finally broke **away/down/up** at 3 a.m.
3. He broke **down/up/off** to answer the phone.
4. The crisis was brought **off/up/about** by his resignation.
5. After much discussion, I brought the committee **out/about/round** to my point of view.
6. Mark was called **out/about/up** when the war broke **out/about/up**.
7. Let me explain how the situation came **out/about/away**.
8. The government has come **at/off/in** for a lot of criticism over the decision.
9. I'm afraid that deal didn't come **about/out/off** after all.
10. We've come **at/off/up** against a bit of a problem.
11. Dog licences have been done **away/out/off** with.
12. We are having our living room done **away/about/up**.
13. It was an unlikely story but he fell **at/after/for** it.
14. I fell **at/after/for** you the moment I saw you.
15. What are you getting **on/off/at** exactly?
16. This cold weather really gets me **down/up/on**.
17. It's time we got **down/up/on** to some work.
18. They were lucky to get **down/on/off** with such light sentences.
19. Sue is getting **down/on/off** in her new job.
20. His false identity papers gave him **out/off/away**.
21. The cheese had begun to give **out/off/away** a strange smell.

22. I don't go **in/at/off** for that kind of thing.
23. This milk has gone **in/at/off**.
24. Something funny is going **in/on/at**.
25. There weren't enough life-jackets to go **at/over/round**.
26. Sorry I'm late, I was held **out/on/up** in the traffic.
27. Well done! Keep **on/up/down** the good work!
28. Sorry to let you **down/out/in**, but I can't give you a lift today.
29. The police have promised to look **at/into/over** the problem.
30. If you're passing through Athens, look me **at/into/up**.
31. The thief made **off/away/up** with a valuable necklace.
32. I couldn't quite make **away/off/out** what the notice said.
33. Jane is really odd. I can't make her **off/out/about**.
34. I think you made **off/out/up** the whole story.
35. Our success makes **off/out/up** for all the hard times.
36. Harry is clever but he can't put his ideas **on/off/across**.
37. We can put you **on/off/up** for a few days.
38. I can't put **on/off/up** with all that noise!
39. Guess who I ran **into/over/down** at the supermarket!
40. Let's run **into/over/down** the plan once more.
41. We've run **down/up/over** against a slight problem.
42. I went to the station to see them **out/about/off**.
43. I saw **about/out/through** his intentions at once.
44. I think the rain has set **on/in/off** for the day.
45. This document sets **on/off/out** all the Union demands.
46. I will not stand **for/up/out** this kind of behaviour.
47. Don't be taken **in/on/off** by her apparent shyness.
48. Dave takes **in/on/off** the Prime Minister really well.
49. She has taken **in/on/off** too much with a full-time job as well.
50. You'll soon take **off/to/in** your new boss, I'm sure.
51. The meeting took **up/in/on** the whole morning.
52. Another company offered me a job but I turned them **off/down/out**.
53. He turned **off/out/up** to be an old friend of Helen's.
54. Don't worry about that missing book, it's bound to turn **up/off/out** sooner or later.
55. Not many people turned **out/up/in** for the lesson.

## B

1. His teacher followed him into the classroom because she realised he **was up to/was up at** something.
2. The boys **got away from/got away with** smoking in the kitchen garden because none of the teachers ever went there.

3. The older pupils had to **look forward to/ look after** the eleven-year olds at lunchtime.
4. She didn't enjoy Latin so she **gave it up/gave up it** when she was sixteen.
5. The classroom was so hot that two boys **passed by/passed out**.
6. She was very disappointed when she failed her exams and never **got over it/got it over**.
7. At the age of eleven all the pupils **took to/took up** a musical instrument.
8. **I went after/went for** him down the street, but I couldn't catch up with him.
9. I'm afraid the meat has **gone out/gone off**.
10. We'll have to **go after/go over** these figures once again.
11. He **went on with/went over** his story before anyone could stop him.
12. His jacket doesn't **go up with/go with** his trousers.

### 7.2.2. Choose the correct alternative to complete each sentence.

#### A

1. The company is expanding and it's taking ..... a lot of new workers.  
a) up b) over c) on d) in
2. You'll never guess who I ran ..... the other day. It was David! I hadn't seen him for ages.  
a) over b) into c) through d) along
3. I must write down some of this information, there's too much for me to take ..... all at once.  
a) in b) up c) over d) off
4. Sadly, she never came ..... after the accident and soon died.  
a) across b) round c) out d) off
5. The flight was late because we didn't take ..... until after midnight.  
a) in b) off c) up d) over
6. Oh no! We've run ..... bread again. Can you go and get some more?  
a) over b) through c) into d) out of
7. Unfortunately, the holiday wasn't as relaxing as we had hoped. We came ..... a lot of unexpected problems.  
a) round b) across c) up against d) off
8. The air crash investigators are looking ..... the cause of the accident.  
a) into b) across c) over d) at
9. It's a lovely sofa, but it would take ..... too much space in the sitting room.  
a) on b) into c) up d) off
10. If you've forgotten his phone number, why don't you look it ..... in the phone book?  
a) over b) by c) up d) through
11. I'm counting on you to organise the event, so please don't let me .....  
a) on b) in c) out d) down

12. I hear they don't see each other any more. Why did they break .....?  
**a) up b) down c) in d) off**
13. The champion was taken ..... in the second round by a much younger competitor.  
**a) up b) over c) in d) off**
14. How did the thieves manage to get ..... after they had robbed the bank?  
**a) away b) away with c) off d) through**
15. He dressed as a woman to escape from prison but his deep voice gave him .....  
**a) in b) up c) away d) off**
16. I'm very close to my brother and we get ..... with each other very well.  
**a) over b) on c) away d) along**
17. Jeremy rang me up and pretended to be a policeman, but I wasn't taken ..... by him.  
 I recognised his voice at once.  
**a) in b) away c) up d) on**
18. The terrorists argued with the police for hours, but in the end they finally gave .....  
 and threw down their guns.  
**a) up b) in c) away d) off**

## B

1. I must go on a diet. I ..... a lot of weight.  
**a) held up b) pun on c) put up d) brought up**
2. We were ..... when we saw how much he had changed.  
**a) pulled out b) taken by surprise c) taken aback d) set back**
3. So you've passed your driving test! This ..... a celebration!  
**a) calls for b) calls up c) takes after d) takes to**
4. I try to be friendly but it's hard to ..... some of my colleagues.  
**a) come up with b) get by c) get on with d) get after**
5. After he was knocked out, it took a long time to .....  
**a) bring him round b) keep him in c) let him off d) bring him down**
6. What do the initials LTP .....?  
**a) take over b) turn out c) stand for d) keep to**
7. Suddenly the fire alarm ..... and everyone had to leave the building.  
**a) got round b) set off c) went off d) turned round**
8. She's so depressed. All these problems are really .....  
**a) getting her down b) getting round her c) taking her on d) taking her down**
9. A car suddenly ..... in front of me and I couldn't stop in time.  
**a) got by b) came by c) turned out d) pulled out**
10. You'll have to ..... early if you want to avoid all the traffic.  
**a) come apart b) go about c) put off d) set off**
11. I had to ..... the boss while she was away.  
**a) put in for b) stand in for c) take after d) go after**

12. The road was blocked so we had to ..... and find another route.  
**a) run through b) fall off c) get off d) turn back**
13. I'm sure you'll ..... the new assistant the moment you see her. She's really very nice.  
**a) fall for b) get at c) stand for d) look at**
14. We finally managed to ..... our point of view.  
**a) bring her round to b) take her up on c) put up with her d) get round her**
15. On the day I left, the whole family ..... at the station.  
**a) saw me off b) stood in for me c) took me up d) put me up**
16. Why do they ..... talking about money all the time?  
**a) take after b) keep on c) take on d) get after**
17. How old is he? – He's ..... now. He must be at least ninety.  
**a) coming off b) getting back c) getting on d) falling out**
18. She had to ..... because someone else wanted to use the phone.  
**a) hold on b) keep up c) stand out d) hang up.**
19. She was so convincing that we were completely ..... by her story.  
**a) gone through b) held down c) taken in d) taken down**
20. So many people were ill that we had to ..... the meeting.  
**a) take out b) set down c) put out d) put off**
21. Your name ..... in the course of the conversation.  
**a) kept on b) came up c) set out d) turned out**
22. They were late as they had been ..... in the traffic jam.  
**a) set off b) held off c) held up d) set up**
23. The Government ..... these reforms in the face of considerable opposition.  
**a) carried through b) carried over c) carried off d) carried away**
24. I found myself being ..... in the general mood of excitement.  
**a) carried through b) carried off c) carried away d) carried out**



**7.2.3. Rewrite each sentence so that it contains the word in capitals, and so that the meaning stays the same.**

1. Don't worry about the missing dog. It will come back when it gets hungry!	UP
2. The treaty explains the terms of the agreement to reduce nuclear arms.	OUT
3. Don't be deceived by his long words!	IN
4. Is there enough juice for everyone?	GO
5. Alan is a strange person. I can't understand his character.	OUT
6. I can't bear your constant complaining.	WITH
7. The box smelled faintly of fish.	GAVE
8. She promised to baby sit but didn't show up.	LET
9. You're kidding!	PULLING
10. Some men are coming to decorate our bedroom.	DONE
11. How exactly did this situation happen in the first place?	COME
12. Let's give this business our serious attention.	DOWN
13. Carol has trouble communicating her ideas to others.	ACROSS
14. What are you trying to say?	AT
15. He stopped talking to deal with a customer.	OFF
16. I have to leave early because something has happened.	UP
17. Suddenly she went in the direction of the door.	FOR
18. I know you have invented the whole story. It's not true.	UP

**7.2.4. Replace the underlined words in these sentences with a phrasal verb.**

1. I'm not well off but I survive with a little help from my friends.
2. I've been trying to contact you for hours but the line was engaged.
3. You've forgotten to fasten your shoe-laces.
4. The new manager is not very good at explaining his ideas to his staff.
5. The concert was postponed till the following day because the singer was ill.
6. Hang on a moment and I'll just connect you with the sales department.
7. If you continue the good work you've been doing, you will get grade A.
8. The students wrote everything the lecturer said in their notebooks.
9. Do you think the new hospital will be mentioned at the meeting on Monday?
10. What questions do you think are going to be set in the exam?
11. I think I'll start attending karate lessons.
12. The cold weather is really depressing me at the moment!
13. I'm not an early riser – I can't stand rising early in the morning!
14. I was raised in England, but moved to the US when I was twenty.
15. The government have set up an enquiry to investigate the causes of the oil disaster.
16. We've got a smaller table in the kitchen because the old one occupied far too much space.
17. Mandy's very upset because she drove over her cat last week while she was driving into her garage.

18. I've been very tired at work, so I'm anticipating going away on holiday next week.
19. The course is quite hard – there's so much information to digest.
20. The pilot encountered difficulties, and had to return to the airport for an emergency landing.
21. If you are not sure how to use a phrasal verb, try to find it in a dictionary.
22. When the company was given to another owner, the new bosses made a lot of people redundant.
23. Let's consider the arrangements for tomorrow's visit so that we all know what we are meant to do.
24. She returned all his presents because she didn't love him anymore.
25. She refused his offer of marriage.
26. She gave him back the ring and cancelled their engagement.
27. He didn't want to tell his father where he had been, so he invented a story about having to stay late at school.
28. You'll be at the station at 10, won't you? OK, I'll come to say goodbye to you.
29. He started loving her as soon as he saw her – it was love at first sight.
30. If you're free this afternoon, why don't you visit Mrs Smith on your way home?
31. Sylvia and Peter don't have a friendly relationship with each other at all.
32. When I kept getting into trouble at school, my parents understandably felt I had failed to fulfill their hopes.
33. I was extremely disappointed when I found out that my uncle had spent three years in prison: I had always respected him and considered him a role model.
34. He wasn't ready for a new relationship as he still hadn't recovered from his divorce.
35. I don't usually despise people who don't know anything I do.

**7.2.5. Rewrite each sentence so that it has a similar meaning and contains a form of the phrasal verb given.**

1. Don't leave the lights on when you leave the school. (**turn off**)  
.....
2. You should use a dictionary to find this word. (**look up**)  
.....
3. The athletics meeting was postponed for a week. (**put off**)  
.....
4. The doctor told David to stop playing football. (**give up**)  
.....
5. Could you write all the details on this paper? (**put down**)  
.....

6. Jack arrived half-way through the lesson. (**turn up**)

.....

7. You can stay with us for a week. (**put up**)

.....

8. Helen is doing well in her English class. (**get on**)

.....

9. Paula spent her childhood with her grandparents while her parents were in Uruguay.  
(**bring up**)

.....

10. As soon as it was dawn, we started our journey. (**set off**)

.....

11. How do you start the computer? (**turn on**)

.....

12. Skating is a great sport. When did you start doing it? (**take up**)

.....

13. Carol checked the dates in an encyclopedia. (**look up**)

.....

14. Parachuting is dangerous so you should stop doing it. (**give up**)

.....

15. Martin tidies his room every morning. (**do up**)

.....

**7.2.6. Complete each pair of sentences by using two phrasal verbs that are opposite in meaning.**

1. I can't hear what she's saying. Can you \_\_\_\_\_ the volume? – I'm not deaf! Please \_\_\_\_\_ the volume a bit!

2. I thought Paul was marvellous. I \_\_\_\_\_ him as my hero and tried to be like him.  
They were such snobs! They \_\_\_\_\_ anyone they thought had come from an inferior school.

3. I can't go dancing every night! I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ tonight and watch TV.  
– Watching TV is boring! Let's \_\_\_\_\_ for a change and see a film, or something.

4. The band played the national anthem and everyone in the audience \_\_\_\_\_  
This is the most comfortable chair, I think. Please \_\_\_\_\_.

5. Sharon wanted to listen to the news so she \_\_\_\_\_ the radio.  
The programme wasn't very good so Tim \_\_\_\_\_ the radio.

6. If the temperature is too low, the heating \_\_\_\_\_ automatically.  
If the temperature is too high, the heating \_\_\_\_\_ automatically.

7. You're soaking wet! Now, \_\_\_\_\_ those wet clothes and get into the bath.  
You aren't wearing your slippers! \_\_\_\_\_ them \_\_\_\_\_ or your feet will get cold.

8. Linda locked the door and \_\_\_\_\_ the cash box \_\_\_\_\_ from the top shelf.  
Linda took some coins out of the box and \_\_\_\_\_ it \_\_\_\_\_ on the shelf.
9. Only a few days of school left, the pupils \_\_\_\_\_ for the holidays next week.  
The vacation will soon be over. The students \_\_\_\_\_ to college on Monday.
10. \_\_\_\_\_ Mr Davidson \_\_\_\_\_? – No, he is not. He \_\_\_\_\_ on a week's holiday. He'll be back next Monday.

### 7.2.7. Choose the most suitable phrasal verb, a), b), c) or d).

#### Earworms

According to recent research, certain songs stick in our minds because they create what's called an "earworm" which can only be (1) \_\_\_\_\_ by singing them. This kind of song has an upbeat melody and repetitive lyrics. Women tend to be most susceptible to earworms, and musicians more receptive to them than non-musicians.

It goes without saying that this research will be of particular interest to the pop-music industry which is always trying to (2) \_\_\_\_\_ sales of CDs. One of the key features of an earworm is its simplicity, since a song with lots of detailed content is not so easily assimilated by the brain. Earworms need to be (3) \_\_\_\_\_ very quickly, so that people can reproduce them in full while (4) \_\_\_\_\_ the street, simply because they can't get them of their heads.

What's more, earworms aren't so easily removed. Replacement strategies, by which a sufferer might try to replace the tune with another, rarely work for earworm, because as you search your memory for another tune, you're likely to (5) \_\_\_\_\_ with another earworm. Some experts argue that if you listen to such an infectious piece of music several times, it will (6) \_\_\_\_\_, but others are not so convinced.

1. a) taken away b) given away c) carried away d) put away
2. a) take up b) put up c) take down d) put down
3. a) taken in b) caught on c) called up d) set up
4. a) get out them b) bring out them c) send them out d) get them out
5. a) pick out b) go down c) come up d) fall back
6. a) come up b) come out c) go away d) go out

### 7.2.8. Fill in the gaps with missing prepositions.

#### A

When I was young my father always told me how important it was to get (1) \_\_\_ in life and be a success. I think he wanted me to be a doctor or a lawyer. And I can remember how disappointed he was when I left school and started work as a secretary.

At the beginning I liked the job, but as time passed the work started to take (2) \_\_\_ more of my time. And in addition to this I had to put (3) \_\_\_ with poor working conditions and a

low salary – I earned just enough to get (4) \_\_\_\_ -- and there were no promotion prospects at all. All this really got me (5) \_\_\_\_ . And then I started to wonder if I was really cut (6) \_\_\_\_ for this kind of work.

Then one day I went to see my boss to ask for some time off work. I needed to visit my mother, who wasn't well at the time. He said it was out of the question. I tried explaining but I just couldn't get (7) \_\_\_\_ to him. That was the last straw. The next day I handed (8) \_\_\_\_ my resignation. I decided to return to studying and go (9) \_\_\_\_ for law. I graduated from London University and now I'm starting to make my way in the world. So was my father right? Is it important to get (10) \_\_\_\_ in the world?

## B

It was love at first sight. I saw her at a friend's birthday party. At the end of the party I said I would like to see her again and asked her out for a meal the following week.

I took her (1) \_\_\_\_ to a small Italian restaurant in Soho. After talking for a while, we found out that we had a lot in common. I realised I was head over heels in love with her. I thought she fell (2) \_\_\_\_ me too. We started going (3) \_\_\_\_ with each other, and after some time we got engaged. We were very happy and made plans to get married the following year.

However, as the weeks passed, I started to feel she was going (4) \_\_\_\_ me. She criticised me all the time. "Why are you always going on (5) \_\_\_\_ me?" I asked.

In the end I wondered if we were suited to one another. I was keen on hard rock and she was fond of classical music. We finally fell (6) \_\_\_\_ over a TV programme. We had a terrible row, broke (7) \_\_\_\_ our engagement, the called (8) \_\_\_\_ the wedding. I was heartbroken, and it took me a long time to get (9) \_\_\_\_ it.

A few months later I heard she was engaged to a man who worked in local government. They got married, but after two years their marriage broke (10) \_\_\_\_ and they got divorced.

## C

J.K. Rowling is the author of a successful series of books. She was born in 1965 and brought (1) \_\_\_\_ in England and South Wales. After she graduated from university, she got a job in London.

In 1990, while she was travelling from Manchester to London, her train was held (2) \_\_\_\_ and during the four-hour delay she got the idea of writing about a young wizard. In 1991 she went to Portugal, where she had a job of teaching English, and she took the manuscript for the first Harry Potter book with her. She came (3) \_\_\_\_ to Britain in 1993 and carried (4) \_\_\_\_ writing it.

Rowling completed *Harry Potter and The Philosopher's Stone* in 1995. Twelve publishers turned it (5) \_\_\_\_ before Bloomsbury agreed to publish it. The decision was apparently made by the young daughter of the company's chairman, who loved the first chapter of the book. The project went (6) \_\_\_\_ really well as the book became popular worldwide.

Today Rowling has a fortune of around one billion dollars. The author believes that people who have a lot of money should make sure they use it responsibly. For this reason, she has given (7) \_\_\_ millions of dollars to charitable causes.

## D

Parents have been offered the ultimate weapon to win the war over how much TV their children watch. It's a coded electronic device, which switches off the set once an allotted period runs (1) \_\_\_, leaving the child to turn (2) \_\_\_ other activities such as reading or even playing in the fresh air.

The gadget, 'TV Allowance', was invented by Miami photographer Randal Levenson, a former engineer, who despaired of ever cutting (3) \_\_\_ on his three children's screen time.

'There was a lot of anger in the house about the TV and Nintendo usage', said Randal.

His response was to build the calculator-sized box which plugs into the TV. The Levensons now use a code to set the four hours that Moss, 13, Cormac, 11, and Geddes, 6 can watch each week. Each has his own code, and when his time is (4) \_\_\_, the screen goes blank. The gadget also controls video games and the video. It can block out specific periods such as homework time and cannot be turned (5) \_\_\_ by frustrated youngsters.

'They've got their lives (6) \_\_\_,', said Mr Levenson's wife, Rusty. 'Not that they were total couch potatoes, but they certainly spent too much time in front of the TV. The problem before was that we were giving (7) \_\_\_. We could only say "No" so many times. But the unemotional gadget can go (8) \_\_\_ saying "No" for as long as necessary.'

But, being children and therefore devious, they have found ways of getting (9) \_\_\_ the system. The set is switched off for advertisements and they barter with each other for TV time. They also decide which programmes more than one child wants to watch. Any time left over at the end of the week can be carried (10) \_\_\_ into the next.

### 7.3. Phrasal Verb Nouns

#### 7.3.1. Study the meanings of the phrasal verb nouns formed out of 'break'.

break-up	breakdown	break-in	breakout/outbreak	breakthrough
the act of ending a marriage or relationship	an occasion when a car stops working	an act of entering a building illegally	an occasion when prisoners escape; a sudden appearance of a disease	a discovery that comes after a lot of work

### 7.3.2. Match the phrasal verb nouns in A with their meanings in B.

<b>A.</b>	<b>B.</b>
1) take-off	a) the final result of sth
2) outcome	b) the time when the plane leaves the ground
3) giveaway	c) an escape from sb who is chasing you
4) takeaway	d) food that is bought in a restaurant and eaten somewhere else
5) getaway	e) sth that a company gives to people without asking for payment
6) upbringing	f) coloured substances that are put on your face
7) make-up	g) the process of raising a child
8) comeback	h) becoming popular again
9) hold-up	i) a problem that prevents progress
10) setback	j) an attempt to rob a place/person by threatening them with a weapon

### 7.3.3. Complete the sentences below with appropriate nouns formed out of phrasal verbs.

1. Scientists predict a major \_\_\_\_\_ within six months.
2. I can't be bothered to cook – let's get a \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Many people blamed the tabloid newspapers for the \_\_\_\_\_ of the marriage of Prince Charles and Princess Diana.
4. We have to check in at least one hour before a \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ of this unknown disease frightened the people of the whole country.
6. There are usually a lot of cheap \_\_\_\_\_ on offer at Christmas.
7. Since the \_\_\_\_\_ we've had all our locks changed.
8. I think I have to get my car seen to. This is the fourth \_\_\_\_\_ I've had this month.
9. He put the money into a box and made a \_\_\_\_\_ on the subway.
10. He refused to comment on the \_\_\_\_\_ of the election.
11. The miniskirt made a \_\_\_\_\_ in the late 1980s.
12. Her bright \_\_\_\_\_ made her absolutely unrecognisable.
13. Mike had had a strict \_\_\_\_\_.
14. Two police officers were shot during an armed \_\_\_\_\_.
15. The team's hopes of playing in Europe suffered a \_\_\_\_\_ last night.

### 7.3.4. Complete each pair of sentences by using one phrasal verb and one noun.

1. They \_\_\_\_\_ into laughter when they saw John was wearing odd socks.  
There was an \_\_\_\_\_ of laughter when they saw John was wearing odd socks.
2. While the robbers were \_\_\_\_\_ the bank, someone sounded the alarm.  
During the \_\_\_\_\_ someone sounded the alarm.
3. Because of all the stress Silvia \_\_\_\_\_ and had to go into hospital.  
Because of all the stress Silvia had a nervous \_\_\_\_\_ and went into hospital.

4. You aren't allowed to smoke while the plane is \_\_\_\_\_ .

You aren't allowed to smoke during \_\_\_\_\_ .

5. The fighting \_\_\_\_\_ soon after the assassination attempt.

There was an \_\_\_\_\_ of fighting soon after the assassination attempt.

6. Her parents \_\_\_\_\_ Ethel \_\_\_\_\_ to know the difference between right and wrong.

As a result of her \_\_\_\_\_ Ethel has strong sense of the difference between right and wrong.

7. A nurse was \_\_\_\_\_ the scene of the accident, and she gave first aid.

One of the \_\_\_\_\_ was a nurse, and she gave first aid.

8. The crooks \_\_\_\_\_ from the police in a helicopter.

The crooks made their \_\_\_\_\_ in a helicopter.

9. The people who were \_\_\_\_\_ cheered as they saw Anne being rescued from the sea.

The \_\_\_\_\_ cheered as they saw Anne being rescued from the sea.

10. Last night we \_\_\_\_\_ at my house to plan the party.

Last night we had a \_\_\_\_\_ at my house to plan the party.



## PART II. WIDEN YOUR VOCABULARY

### 1. WORD FORMATION

#### 1.1. Affixation

##### 1.1.1. Prefixes

With the meaning 'not' prefixes *un-*, *in-*, *il-*, *im-*, *ir-*, *mis-*, and *dis-* are often used to give adjectives, as well as some verbs and nouns, a negative meaning.

Positive meaning	Negative meaning	Positive meaning	Negative meaning
happy(adj) possible (adj) correct (adj)	<b>un</b> happy (adj) <b>im</b> possible (adj) <b>in</b> correct (adj)	like (v) legal (adj) regular (adj)	<b>dis</b> like (v) <b>il</b> legal (adj) <b>ir</b> regular (adj)

*im-* is used before some words beginning with *m* or *p*: *im*polite, *im*patient, *im*mortal.

*il-* is used before some words beginning with *l*: *ill*iterate, *il*logical.

*ir-* is used before some words beginning with *r*: *ir*responsible, *ir*rational.

#### Ex.1. Form the opposite adjectives.

lucky/pleasant/reliable \_\_\_\_\_

legal/logical/literate \_\_\_\_\_

moral/mature/modest \_\_\_\_\_

practical/patient/perfect \_\_\_\_\_

regular/responsible/relevant \_\_\_\_\_

#### Ex.2. Fill in the table with the adjectives opposite to the given below.

possible, correct, accurate, moral, attentive, polite, mobile, sane, satisfied, able, organised, practical, adequate, active, obedient, fortunate, real, productive, safe, mortal, visible, sensitive, fair, stable, secure, natural, equal, honest, visible, friendly, tidy, tolerant, experienced, competent

im-	in-	dis-	mis-	un-

### Ex.3. Form the opposite out of the following nouns /

agreement, stability, behaviour, appearance, order, justice, understanding, fortune, equality, respect, satisfaction, adequacy, accuracy, conception, sanity, tolerance.

dis-	mis-	in-

### Verb prefixes:

**un- and dis-** have two meanings: a **negative** meaning (*to dress – to **un**ldress*) and they can also mean ‘**the opposite** of an action’ or ‘to reverse an action. This meaning is used with certain verbs: *to lock – to **un**lock, to pack – to **un**pack, to appear – to **dis**appear*

re- (= again)	over- (= too much)	mis- (= badly or incorrectly)
<i>to write – to <b>re</b>write</i>	<i>to work – to <b>over</b>work</i>	<i>to understand – to <b>mis</b>understand, to pronounce – to <b>mis</b>pronounce</i>

### Ex.4. Form the opposite out of the following verbs.

behave, understand, dress, agree, inform, block, obey, appear, spell, approve, qualify, pronounce, button

dis-	mis-	un-

### Ex.5. Complete the verbs in these sentences.

- I'm sorry, I mis\_\_\_\_\_ her message completely.
- We un\_\_\_\_\_ as soon as we got to the hotel, then went out for a walk.
- She was here a minute ago, but then she dis\_\_\_\_\_. I'm afraid I don't know where she is now.
- We normally have similar opinions but I dis\_\_\_\_\_ with him totally on the subject of drugs.

5. My homework was so bad that I'll have to re\_\_\_\_\_ it.
6. Apparently her alarm clock didn't ring and she over\_\_\_\_\_.
7. She finally managed to un\_\_\_\_\_ the door and we were able to go inside.
8. I dis\_\_\_\_\_ the film, but the others enjoyed it.
9. I don't think I'll pass the exam, but I can always re\_\_\_\_\_ it in September.
10. The post office shuts for lunch but it should re..... at 2.00 p.m.
11. She's over\_\_\_\_\_ at the moment. She really needs a holiday and a complete break from her job.
12. My sister wrapped up my present so well that it took me about five minutes to un\_\_\_\_\_ it.

### Specific meanings of some prefixes:

**auto-** (=self): *autobiography, autonomous*

**pseudo-** (=false, pretended): *pseudo-intellectual, pseudonym*

**out-** (=more, better etc. than): *outshone, outstay*

**arch-** (=chief, main, highest-ranking): *archbishop, arch-enemy, arch-villain*

**extra-** (=more; bigger etc. than): *extra-curricular, extra-large*

**mal-** (=badly, wrongly): *malfunction, maladjusted, malodorous*

**neo-** (=new, revived): *neo-classical, neo-Nazi*

**hyper-** (=extremely, too): *hypersensitive, hypertension, hypercritical*

**fore-** (=before, in front of): *foreground, foregone*

**a-** (=not, without): *amoral*

**semi-** (= half): *semi-circle, semi-detached*

**uni-, mono-** (=one): *unicorn, unicycle, monotonous, monosyllable*

**bi-** (=two): *bisect, bicentenary, biplane, bigamist*

**tri-** (=three): *tricolour, tricycle*

**sub-** (=under/below a level): *submarine; subway*

**non-** (=used to say that sth/sb is not a particular thing, or does not do a particular thing): *non-smoker; non-stop; non-fiction*

**Ex. 6. Complete each sentence with a word formed from a word given in the box, using one of the prefixes given in the list below. The first sentence has been done for you.**

way ground cycle circle large national adjusted enemy

*sub-; inter-; fore-; arch-; tri-; semi-; extra-; mal-*

1. You may cross the street by the subway which is over there.
2. The teacher arranged the desks in a/an \_\_\_\_\_.
3. There are two figures in the \_\_\_\_\_ of the picture.

4. It's much safer for a young child to ride a/an \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Most countries have signed a/an \_\_\_\_\_ agreement banning whaling.
6. She wears \_\_\_\_\_ sized clothes.
7. Children who grow up in the time of war are more likely to be \_\_\_\_\_ than other children.
8. At the beginning of the 19th century, Britain's \_\_\_\_\_ was France.

**Ex. 7. Complete each sentence with a word formed from the word underlined. Begin the word with a prefix from the box.**

in- dis- re- un- non- over- trans- vice-

1. I'm not satisfied with your work. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ with it.
2. She doesn't have the usual kind of haircut. It's very \_\_\_\_\_.
3. We haven't decided where to go yet. We are \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Mary is sailing across the Atlantic. She is on a \_\_\_\_\_ voyage.
5. Dan is the president's assistant. He is the \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Terry is no longer a smoker. Now he is a \_\_\_\_\_.
7. Don't wear a formal suit. The dinner is quite \_\_\_\_\_.
8. I don't think this rule is fair. It's \_\_\_\_\_ to older students.
9. You haven't written this clearly. It'll have to be \_\_\_\_\_.
10. This steak is cooked too much. It's \_\_\_\_\_.

**Ex. 8. Add one of the prefixes in the box to each sentence to complete the word so that it makes sense.**

auto- dis- ex- in- mis- non- over- semi- sub- un-

1. Hillary was very tired and suffering from \_\_\_\_ work.
2. We couldn't see the magician! He became \_\_\_\_ visible.
3. I could only cross the road by going down a \_\_\_\_ way.
4. Nobody believed what Mary wrote in her \_\_\_\_ biography.
5. Let me introduce you to Janet, my \_\_\_\_ wife.
6. What he said was not clear. In fact it was rather \_\_\_\_ leading.
7. Unfortunately our football team lost in the \_\_\_\_ final.
8. Mr Smith regrets that he is \_\_\_\_ able to accept your invitation.
9. This is a good train, it goes to Manchester \_\_\_\_ stop.
10. Where is my pencil sharpener? It has \_\_\_\_ appeared again.

**Ex. 9. Put each of the above prefixes in its correct space in the sentences below.**

1. He uses \_\_\_\_-scientific language to persuade the readers.
2. Young children can sometimes be \_\_\_\_active – they can't keep still.
3. Although he was older than his wife, he \_\_\_\_lived her by ten years.
4. School \_\_\_\_form is not compulsory in this country.
5. The authorities are concerned at the activities of some \_\_\_\_-fascist groups.
6. Who can \_\_\_\_tell what the future holds for us?
7. He rode a tricycle, declaring it to be safer and more stable than a \_\_\_\_cycle.
8. The scientist proposed a scheme for \_\_\_\_rail transport in London.
9. She has two sons and a daughter, whose birth as \_\_\_\_plets in 2002 she describes as the happiest event in her life.
10. It's no use asking him about the political system or the parties. He doesn't know or care. He's completely \_\_\_\_political.

### 1.1.2. Suffixes

#### Noun suffixes

<u>Verb + suffix = noun</u>	<u>Adjective + suffix = noun</u>
<i>to improve + -ment – improvement</i> <i>to elect + -ion – election</i> <i>to inform + -ation – information</i> <i>to jog + -ing – jogging</i>	<i>weak + -ness – weakness</i> <i>happy + -ness – happiness</i> <i>similar + -ity – similarity</i> <i>punctual + -ity – punctuality</i>

**Ex.10. Write the noun form of the following verbs and adjectives. Use the suffixes -ion, -ity, -ment, -ness, -ance and -ence.**

Verbs	Nouns	Adjectives	Nouns
<i>amuse</i>	...	<i>important</i>	...
<i>decide</i>	...	<i>fit</i>	...
<i>appear</i>	...	<i>sincere</i>	...
<i>entertain</i>	...	<i>happy</i>	...
<i>explain</i>	...	<i>secure</i>	...
<i>perform</i>	...	<i>evident</i>	...
<i>imagine</i>	...	<i>careless</i>	...
<i>develop</i>	...	<i>original</i>	...

**Ex.11. Combine the suffixes from the box with the words in the list, and then complete the text below. (Remember you may need to make a small spelling change.)**

-ment -ity -ion -ation -ness

*improve, televise, manage, elect, educate, govern, weak, stupid*

In his first broadcast on \_\_\_\_\_ since he won the \_\_\_\_\_ last month, the Prime Minister promised to make health and \_\_\_\_\_ two of his top priorities. And in a strong attack on the previous \_\_\_\_\_, he said that the present \_\_\_\_\_ of the British economy was caused entirely by their \_\_\_\_\_ and bad \_\_\_\_\_. He said he would act immediately and he hoped the British people would be able to see clear signs of an \_\_\_\_\_ in the economy by the end of the year.

**Suffixes to form the words for people**

Root word	Suffix	Person
snowboard	<b>-er</b>	snowboarder
spectate	<b>-or</b>	spectator
parachute	<b>-ist</b>	parachutist
participate	<b>-ant</b>	participant
engine	<b>-eer</b>	engineer
employ	<b>-er/-ee</b>	employer/employee
politics	<b>-ian</b>	politician

**Ex.12. Add an appropriate suffix from the table (1.2.2) to form the words for the corresponding people.**

Root word	Person
instruct	.....
economic	.....
mountain	.....
electric	.....
entertain	.....
assist	.....
interview	.....
murder	.....
manage	.....
act	.....
translate	.....

**Ex.13. Form female nouns out of male nouns.****Example:** *actor – actress.*

waiter, host, steward, master, manager, mister.

**Adjective suffixes**

Noun + <b>suffix</b> = adjective	Verb + <b>suffix</b> = adjective
<b>-ous:</b> <i>fame – famous</i> <b>-al:</b> <i>music – musical</i> <b>-y:</b> <i>dirt – dirty</i> <b>-able(-ible):</b> <i>comfort – comfortable</i> <b>-ic:</b> <i>history – historic</i> <b>-ful</b> (= full of): <i>help – helpful</i> <b>-less</b> (= without): <i>use -- useless</i> <b>-ish:</b> <i>England – English</i> <b>-ic:</b> <i>Iceland – Icelandic</i> <b>-ese:</b> <i>China – Chinese</i>	<b>-ive:</b> <i>create – creative,</i>

**Ex.14. The adjective healthy is formed by adding -y to the noun health. Which of the following words are formed in the same way?**

thirsty guilty lively happy mystery stormy sleepy  
 silly hilly party nasty cloudy lengthy injury

**Ex.15. How many of these words can form opposites with the suffix -less?**

painful, wonderful, useful, careful, beautiful, tactful, awful, thoughtful

**Ex.16. Form adjectives out of the following nouns.**

a) comfort, critic, affection, memory, commerce, ecology, economy, pleasure, music, nation, tolerance, industry, person, history, document, misery, sensibility, compulsion (2), explanation, expense, argument

-al	-ant/-ent	-ive	-able/-ible	-ary/-ory

b) care, use, wonder, gold, danger, nerve, excitement, wood, interest, surprise, imitation, expense, product, beauty, secretary, confidence, thought, substance, manager, tact, grace, success, ambition, courage

<b>-en</b>	<b>-ful</b>	<b>-ing</b>	<b>-ial/-tial</b>	<b>-ous</b>
------------	-------------	-------------	-------------------	-------------

c) history, trouble, academy, hero, dirt, sun, trust, cloud, trouble, east, friend, frost, heart, picture, Rome, back, quarrel, luck, week, electricity, day, drama, fantasy, economy

<b>-ic</b>	<b>-y/-ly</b>	<b>-worthy</b>	<b>-wards</b>	<b>-some</b>	<b>-esque</b>
------------	---------------	----------------	---------------	--------------	---------------

d) Russia, Africa, Italy, Poland, Hungary, Holland, France, Greece, Nepal, Punjab, Vietnam, Turkey, Denmark, Spain, Japan, Portugal, Burma, Australia, New-Zealand

<b>-ish</b>	<b>-ese</b>	<b>-an/-ian</b>	<b>-ic</b>	<b>other</b>
-------------	-------------	-----------------	------------	--------------

**Ex.17. To form the adjectives for the following verbs, the suffix -ive is used. What other spelling changes are required?**

compare	defend	compete	describe
receive	represent	produce	act
		create	

**Ex. 18. Write the adjectives formed from the following nouns.**

<b>Noun</b>	<b>Adjective</b>
finance	<i>financial</i>
commerce	.....
psychology	.....
politics	.....
anxiety	.....
variety	.....
influence	.....
residence	.....
mystery	.....
advantage	.....



**Ex.19.** Which of the suffixes *-ful* and *-less* can be used to form adjectives from the words in the box? If either of them cannot be used, is there an alternative?

**Example:** *success – successful – unsuccessful (not successful).*

*pain, skill, home, harm, end, cheer, power, delight, care, thought, price, use*

**Ex.20.** Fill the gaps with suitable adjectives.

1. You must be very \_\_\_\_\_ when you drive in wet weather.
2. It was so \_\_\_\_\_ this morning that I couldn't see more than twenty metres in front of me.
3. Everyone in my country has heard of her; she's very \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The people in the tourist information office were very \_\_\_\_\_ and answered all our questions without any problems.
5. This is a very \_\_\_\_\_ road; there were at least three serious accidents on it last year.
6. It was very \_\_\_\_\_ when I hit my leg against the corner of the table.
7. This bag is very \_\_\_\_\_ because I can use it for work or when I go on holiday.
8. The factory is in the middle of the \_\_\_\_\_ part of the city, surrounded by other factories.
9. I made some coffee but it was horrible. In fact, my sister said it was \_\_\_\_\_.
10. It seems terrible to me that there are so many \_\_\_\_\_ people living in the city with thousands of empty houses.

### Verb suffixes

**Ex.21.** Fill in the table with verbs formed out of the following a) adjectives and b) nouns.

a) **Adjectives:** active, broad, false, worse, simple, sweet, wide, dead, regular, different, dark, long, normal, deaf, stable, just, red.

b) **Nouns:** beauty, critic, harmony, memory, organisation, classification, economy, advertisement, qualification.

-ate	-en	-ify	-ise/-ize
<i>activate</i>	<i>widen</i>	<i>classify</i>	<i>organise</i>

### Specific meanings of some suffixes

-wards (=in the direction of): *seawards, skywards*  
 -most (=furthest): *northernmost, foremost*  
 -some (=causing, making): *tiresome, wearisome*  
 -let, -ette, -ling (=small): *droplet, piglet, kitchenette, duckling*  
 -scope (=means of observing): *periscope, microscope*  
 -scape (=scenery): *moonscape, landscape*  
 -esque (=like, in the manner of): *Romanesque*

**Ex.22. Use suffixes from the box above to complete the following sentences.**

1. He betrayed the inner\_\_\_\_\_ secrets of his country's government to the enemy.
2. Even the most powerful tele\_\_\_\_\_ does not make the smallest stars visible.
3. I have a backache which is a bit trouble\_\_\_\_\_ at times.
4. From Columbia we went south \_\_\_\_\_ through Ecuador, Peru and Bolivia to Argentina.
5. It's very picture\_\_\_\_\_ here, with the trees attractively framing the view of the river.
6. The award takes the form of a silver statu\_\_\_\_\_ of the Greek god, Adonis.
7. A gos\_\_\_\_\_ is a young goose.
8. His home is in the country and he's wondering if he can afford to buy a flat\_\_\_\_\_ in London too.
9. His most famous sea\_\_\_\_\_ was painted in 1879 and hangs in the National Gallery.
10. This book\_\_\_\_\_ will help you to travel in Europe.

### Mixed Practice

**Ex.23. Complete each gap with an appropriate noun form of the word in capitals. The noun you require may also need a plural ending or a negative prefix (un-, in-, im-, dis- etc). There is an example at the beginning (0).**

-hood -ship -ure -al -ness -ation -ance  
 -ence -iety -ity -ment -age -cy

0. His latest publication is a book of verse on the theme of relationships. (**PUBLISH**)
1. Light \_\_\_\_\_ will be served from 3.30 pm in the main hall. (**REFRESH**)
2. Union members expressed the \_\_\_\_\_ of the management's offer by walking out of the meeting. (**APPROVE**)
3. In her \_\_\_\_\_ to answer the phone, she almost fell down the stairs. (**EAGER**)
4. In the interests of safety a number of standard \_\_\_\_\_ need to be followed. (**PROCEED**)

5. Her 5,000-metre run paled into \_\_\_\_\_ when compared with the marathon her grandfather completed the following work. (**SIGNIFY**)
6. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the device is what has made it so popular. (**SIMPLE**)
7. I cannot comment; I have been sworn to \_\_\_\_\_ on the matter. (**SECRET**)
8. The cost of \_\_\_\_\_ has increased by 10 % this year. (**MEMBER**)
9. Customers will be required to pay for any \_\_\_\_\_. (**BREAK**)
10. There is every \_\_\_\_\_ that prices will continue to rise next year. (**LIKELY**)
11. He valued his \_\_\_\_\_ too much to ever want to get married. (**DEPEND**)
12. It's quite natural to experience a certain amount of \_\_\_\_\_ on your first day at work. (**ANXIOUS**)

**Ex.24. Use the word given in capitals to form a word that fits in the space in the sentence. In each case a different suffix from the box is required to form the noun.**

-ment -ity -ion -ness -ship -ence -ance -or
---

1. Alexander Graham Bell, the \_\_\_\_\_ of the telephone, was born in Edinburgh in 1847. (**INVENT**)
2. It is our \_\_\_\_\_ to speak which makes us so different from other mammals. (**ABLE**)
3. Juliet hadn't been getting on well with her boyfriend, so she decided to end their \_\_\_\_\_. (**RELATE**)
4. I wouldn't have the \_\_\_\_\_ to go fishing; I'd hate the idea of sitting there all day waiting for something to happen. (**PATIENT**)
5. The couple next door had another \_\_\_\_\_ last night; we could hear them shouting at each other. (**ARGUE**)
6. Russell Crowe gave an impressive \_\_\_\_\_ as a gladiator in the film of the same name. (**PERFORM**)
7. He could not hide his feeling of great \_\_\_\_\_ at the death of his dog, Georgia. (**SAD**)
8. She told the teacher that someone had stolen her book, but he didn't believe her \_\_\_\_\_. (**EXPLAIN**)

**Ex.25. Complete each sentence with a word formed from a word given in the list, using one of the prefixes or suffixes from the box. One of the suffixes should be used twice.**

satisfied, friend, thought, trumpet, free, pronounce, employ, night, care, home, great, music

dis- -dom -ee -ship mis- -less -ful over- -er -ian -ness
--

1. Jane knows a lot of French words, but she tends to \_\_\_\_\_ them.
2. You're always breaking things! Why are you so \_\_\_\_\_?
3. I don't want to be a slave! I demand my \_\_\_\_\_.
4. George was very \_\_\_\_\_ with the service at the hotel.
5. How kind of you to bring flowers! That was very \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The government is providing more money to help \_\_\_\_\_ people.
7. A small country can still achieve \_\_\_\_\_.
8. We all believe in \_\_\_\_\_ between the people of different nations.
9. David was tired of being a/an \_\_\_\_\_ so he started his own business.
10. I travelled to Scotland on the \_\_\_\_\_ train and slept all the way.
11. I always wanted to be a \_\_\_\_\_ in a jazz band.
12. Martin plays the guitar, but he isn't a very good \_\_\_\_\_.

**Ex.26. All four words in each of the groups below require the same suffix to form adjectives. Choose the correct suffix -y, -ous, -al or -ive and then decide if any further changes are necessary.**

*Example: anger (angry), hunger (hungry), thirst (thirsty), guilt (guilty)*  
 suffix -y changes: *anger – angry, hunger – hungry*

health	wealth	fun	luck
ambition	religion	infection	caution
occupation	profession	emotion	sensation
cloud	wind	rain	ice
decide	include	explode	offend
biology	geography	economy	history
danger	disaster	humour	poison
compare	imagine	compete	sense
anxiety	variety	curiosity	generosity
benefit	influence	residence	finance

**Ex.27. Fill each space in the sentences below with the correct form of the word in bold print about it.**

**1. produce**

- a) \_\_\_\_\_ of the new sports car has been halted by a strike.
- b) China is one of the world's leading \_\_\_\_\_ of rice.
- c) I'm afraid the talks were totally \_\_\_\_\_. We didn't reach agreement on anything.

**2. advise**

- a) Until the situation has settled down, it is \_\_\_\_\_ to travel to that country.
- b) The government set up an \_\_\_\_\_ body on the use of drugs in sport.
- c) I doubt the \_\_\_\_\_ of drinking alcohol while undergoing that medical treatment.

**3. stable**

- a) To \_\_\_\_\_ the boat in rough sea, we redistributed the weight.
- b) Between 1860 and 1900 the country had a number of revolutions and uprisings. It was a time of great \_\_\_\_\_.
- c) The exchange rate is going up and down dramatically. It's very \_\_\_\_\_ at the moment.

**4. reside**

- a) This is the President's official \_\_\_\_\_.
- b) There's no industry or entertainment here. It's a \_\_\_\_\_ district.
- c) All \_\_\_\_\_ of the neighbouring houses were worried of the gas leak.

**5. comfort**

- a) In that tense situation I found the good news very \_\_\_\_\_.
- b) I felt rather \_\_\_\_\_, so I put a soft cushion behind me.
- c) She sat in a terrible \_\_\_\_\_ on the hard chair for over an hour.

**6. dead**

- a) The increasing number of \_\_\_\_\_ in traffic accidents is alarming.
- b) Be careful! That's a \_\_\_\_\_ poison!
- c) The doctor gave him an injection to \_\_\_\_\_ the pain.

**7. courage**

- a) His friends tried to \_\_\_\_\_ him from attempting the dangerous climb.
- b) She \_\_\_\_\_ stood in the way of the escaping robbers.
- c) His parents gave him a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ in his studies.

**8. real**

- a) I think it's a bit \_\_\_\_\_ to hope that world peace can be gained so easily.
- b) He spends all his time in romantic daydreams. He's lost touch with \_\_\_\_\_.
- c) Ladies and gentlemen, I am a \_\_\_\_\_ and I think we must face facts.

**9. friend**

- a) The \_\_\_\_\_ between the two soon developed into love.
- b) In London she was \_\_\_\_\_ by a rich woman who looked after her and helped her.
- c) The desert is a dangerous \_\_\_\_\_ place.

**10. sense**

- a) He felt a strange, painful \_\_\_\_\_ in his back.
- b) Even the most \_\_\_\_\_ person ought to appreciate the beauty of this music.
- c) What an idiotic \_\_\_\_\_ thing to do!

**11. possess**

- a) In his will he left all his money and \_\_\_\_\_ to his wife.  
 b) She was a very \_\_\_\_\_ mother. She gave her son very little freedom.  
 c) The actor playing the main part should be the \_\_\_\_\_ of a very good voice, good looks and a very strong physique.

**12. form**

- a) It is especially important for children to have love and affection in their \_\_\_\_\_ years.  
 b) The slight \_\_\_\_\_ in his left hand was corrected by surgery.  
 c) The police are considering the \_\_\_\_\_ of a new anti-drug unit.

**13. different**

- a) I'm afraid I have to think \_\_\_\_\_. I don't agree with you at all.  
 b) Politeness is one thing. Real kindness is another. You must learn to \_\_\_\_\_ between the two.  
 c) We get along pretty well, although of course we have our \_\_\_\_\_ from time to time.

**14. active**

- a) The strike was organised by a group of political \_\_\_\_\_.  
 b) The fire-prevention system is \_\_\_\_\_ by any small increase in temperature.  
 c) It is quite safe to go near the volcano. It has been \_\_\_\_\_ for years.

**15. manage**

- a) Talks between workers and \_\_\_\_\_ have broken down and a strike now seems unavoidable.  
 b) The boy was very violent and his parents found him \_\_\_\_\_.  
 c) To improve his qualifications he's taking a course in \_\_\_\_\_ skills.

**Ex. 28. Write down as many forms as possible of the words below. Make sure that you know the meanings of all the words. Consult your dictionary, if necessary.**

**Example:**

*depend (v)—dependent (adj), independent (adj), independently (adv), dependence (n), independence (n), dependant (n), dependable (adj), dependably (adv), dependability (n).*

differ (v) \_\_\_\_\_  
 appear (v) \_\_\_\_\_  
 understand (v) \_\_\_\_\_  
 please (v) \_\_\_\_\_  
 fame (n) \_\_\_\_\_  
 tolerate (v) \_\_\_\_\_  
 change (n) \_\_\_\_\_



**1.2.2. When you use these words as nouns, you need to choose the correct verb to use with it.**

<b><u>verb</u></b>	<b><u>noun</u></b>
We <b>stayed</b> in Paris for a short time.	We <b>had</b> a short <b>stay</b> in Paris.
We <b>rested</b> for a while.	We <b>had</b> a short <b>rest</b> .
She <b>braked</b> quickly.	She <b>put on the brakes</b> quickly.
He needs to <b>diet</b> .	He needs to <b>go on a diet</b> .
They <b>queued</b> for a long time.	<b>We</b> waited in a <b>queue</b> for a long time.
I'm going to <b>ring</b> him.	I'm going to <b>give him a ring</b> .
I <b>looked</b> in the paper.	I <b>had a look</b> in the paper.
He <b>pushed</b> me.	He <b>gave me a push</b> .
I <b>dreamt</b> about you last night.	I <b>had a dream</b> about you last night.
<b>Try</b> to do the task again.	<b>Have another try</b> and do the task.

**1.2.3. Verbs made from nouns and their semantic associations.**

<b>A tool – action performed by the tool</b> hammer – to hammer nail – to nail brush – to brush comb – to comb pencil – to pencil	<b>A part of the body – an action performed by it</b> hand – to hand eye – to eye elbow – to elbow mouth – to mouth shoulder – to shoulder nose – to nose	<b>The name of a profession – an action typical of it</b> nurse – to nurse cook – to cook groom – to groom
<b>The name of a place – the process of occupying it</b> room – to room house – to house cage – to cage	<b>The name of a container – the act of putting something in it</b> can – to can bottle – to bottle pocket – to pocket	<b>The name of a meal – the process of taking it</b> breakfast – to breakfast lunch – to lunch supper – to supper

**Ex.30. Read these pairs of sentences and say if the verb has the same meaning as the noun, a similar meaning, or a completely different meaning?**

1. We had a long <u>wait</u> . 2. Could we have another bottle of <u>water</u> , please? 3. I gave him the <u>book</u> . 4. They always take a <u>break</u> after an hour's work. 5. I go for a <u>run</u> most mornings. 6. Most children like <u>milk</u> . 7. She works as a <u>nurse</u> in a hospital. 8. We <u>go</u> to work by train.	If we <u>wait</u> any longer, we may miss the train. I asked her to <u>water</u> the garden.  Did you <u>book</u> the table in the restaurant? Did he <u>break</u> his arm skiing?  I was late so I had to <u>run</u> to get to school on time. She <u>milked</u> her cow regularly. Her duty is to <u>nurse</u> young children. He has still a lot of <u>go</u> at his age.
--	---



**Ex. 31. In the sentences below, use the appropriate verbs made of the nouns in the box. Use the verbs in the correct form.**

**A**

supper cook water milk hand finger eye face nose nail
---

1. Mum spent the whole morning in the garden \_\_\_\_\_ the flowers.
2. The clerk was \_\_\_\_\_ him expectantly.
3. After he lost his job, he had to \_\_\_\_\_ life with the sum of \$49.
4. He began to \_\_\_\_\_ about. He pulled drawer after drawer, pottering round like an old bloodhound.
5. How on earth do you remember to \_\_\_\_\_ the cows and give pigs their dinner?
6. So the next night I took her out to \_\_\_\_\_ with me.
7. The receptionist \_\_\_\_\_ me the key.
8. She \_\_\_\_\_ the meals in Mr Priestley's house.
9. Use some nails and \_\_\_\_\_ the picture on the wall.
10. The secretary \_\_\_\_\_ the papers on her desk before she found the right one.

**B**

staff poison toy dog head elbow place speed shelter trap pin fish
---

1. Ten minutes later I was \_\_\_\_\_ along in the direction of Cape Town.
2. He spoke casually and \_\_\_\_\_ with his pen.
3. The centre is \_\_\_\_\_ mainly by volunteers.
4. He thought he could be very happy in a house like this if he didn't have to \_\_\_\_\_ his days with work.
5. "I have begun to feel absolutely haunted. This woman \_\_\_\_\_ me," he said sadly.
6. Though the room was small, they managed to \_\_\_\_\_ quite a lot of furniture in it.
7. The exhausted travelers were begging the old woman to \_\_\_\_\_ them.
8. We were running in the direction of the exit \_\_\_\_\_ our way through the crowd.
9. There's no way out! We're \_\_\_\_\_!
10. She \_\_\_\_\_ around in her purse and pulled out a photo.
11. The procession was \_\_\_\_\_ by the Queen on horseback.
12. She \_\_\_\_\_ her arms to her sides.

**Ex.32. The following verbs are made from adjectives. Give their meaning and think of an example to illustrate it.**

to pale .....  
 to yellow .....  
 to grey .....

to cool .....  
 to warm .....  
 to free .....  
 to clean .....

### 1.3. WORD COMPOSITION

**1.3.1. Compound nouns are formed from two nouns, an adjective and a noun or a noun and a verb.**

<u>Compound noun</u>	<u>Meaning</u>
<i>income tax</i>	the tax you pay on your salary
<i>check book</i>	a book which has checks
<i>baby-sitter</i>	he/she looks after children
<i>science fiction</i>	stories about the future
<i>mother tongue</i>	your first language
<i>box office</i>	where you buy tickets in cinemas or theatres
<i>dining room</i>	the room where you eat meals
<i>washing machine</i>	the machine for washing clothes
<i>writing paper</i>	paper for writing letters
<i>parking meter</i>	the machine where you put money to pay for parking your car
<i>first aid</i>	simple medical treatment that if given as soon as possible
<i>hitchhiking</i>	travelling to places by getting free rides from drivers of passing cars

**Compound nouns** are usually written as **two words** (*credit card*), but sometimes they are joined by a **hyphen** (*baby-sitter*), or written as **one word** (*sunglasses*). As there are no rules for this, you may need to check in a dictionary.

**Ex.33. Define the following compound nouns. Use your dictionary to help you if necessary.**

*T-shirt, tin opener, pedestrian crossing, table tennis, earring, sunglasses, credit card, talk show, snapshot, evening gown, sleeping-car, dancing-hall, chatterbox, skydiving.*

**1.3.2.** Quite often, one part of a compound forms the basis for a number of compound nouns, e.g. *post-* / *ticket-* / *box-* office; table *-manners* / *-cloth* / *-lamp*.

**Ex.34.** Continue the list of compound nouns based on one word as in the example above.

a rock star \_\_\_\_\_  
 a waiting room \_\_\_\_\_  
 a mother- in-law \_\_\_\_\_  
 traffic lights/jam/warden \_\_\_\_\_  
 home town \_\_\_\_\_  
 guide dog \_\_\_\_\_

**Ex.35.** Complete these sentences with suitable compound nouns.

1. I'm late because there was a terrible \_\_\_\_\_ in the centre of town.
2. Sofia Loren is a world-known \_\_\_\_\_.
3. My \_\_\_\_\_ didn't ring this morning and I didn't wake up until 9.30.
4. When I got to the surgery, I had to sit in the \_\_\_\_\_ for forty minutes before I could see the dentist.
5. Mary really wanted to see the film but she couldn't find a \_\_\_\_\_ for the children, so she had to stay at home.
6. When I'm driving I always wear \_\_\_\_\_ if it's bright and sunny.
7. You have to pay \_\_\_\_\_ on your salary in Britain; the amount depends on how much you earn.
8. I often have the same problem: I park the car next to a \_\_\_\_\_, and then I discover that I don't have the right money.
9. In some countries you have to have a \_\_\_\_\_ box in your car for minor injuries and illnesses.
10. My brother loves \_\_\_\_\_, but I prefer true stories about the present or the past.

**Ex.36. Match the words 1–8 with the words a-h to form compound nouns.**

1) bottle	a) effect
2) dog	b) pollution
3) greenhouse	c) reserve
4) oil	d) mess
5) traffic	e) bank
6) exhaust	f) slick
7) power	g) station
8) nature	h) fumes

**Ex.37. Complete the compound noun in each sentence, using a word given in the list.**

*bow cut helmet powder storm case fire place steps writing*

1. I couldn't hear the sound of gun \_\_\_\_\_ coming from the main square.
2. We had to take shelter during a severe thunder \_\_\_\_\_ .
3. Nobody can read the doctor's hand \_\_\_\_\_ .
4. You look awful. Why don't you have a hair \_\_\_\_\_ ?
5. I wanted to do some washing but I've run out of soap \_\_\_\_\_ .
6. If you ride a motorbike you have to wear a crash \_\_\_\_\_ .
7. There isn't room in here for another book \_\_\_\_\_ .
8. After the shower, the sun came out and there was a rain \_\_\_\_\_ .
9. I could hear the sound of foot \_\_\_\_\_ . Someone was coming!
10. At one end of the room is a lovely old stone fire \_\_\_\_\_ .

**Ex.38. The following idioms describing people (1–12) are compound words. Explain how they were formed and match them with their definitions (a–l).**

1) all-rounder	a) This person is extremely clever.
2) egghead	b) This person thinks he/she knows everything.
3) show-off	c) This person has a great future ahead of him/her.
4) killjoy	d) This person can do all sorts of things.
5) high-flier	e) This person tries to spoil other people's enjoyment.
6) daredevil	f) This person never only thinks about himself.
7) team player	g) This person loves telling people how good he/she is.
8) couch potato	h) This person is always taking dangerous risks.
9) chatterbox	i) This person is very clever but does not have much sympathy with other people's problems.
10) busybody	j) This person spends too much time watching TV.
11) tough cookie	k) This person tries to interfere in what other people are doing.
12) know-all	l) This person never stops talking.

Use some of the words from the box in the following sentences.

1. "I'm sure he's got his eye on the top job with the amount of work he does, he'll probably get it too." "Yes. He's definitely a \_\_\_\_\_".
2. "She's always trying to interfere in other people's lives. I nearly told her today that what I do in my spare time has nothing to do with her." "Yes, she's a bit of a \_\_\_\_\_."
3. "Some people say she's unfeeling but she's really good at running the business and making it profitable. She'd never let her emotions cloud her judgement." "A bit of a \_\_\_\_\_."
4. "I can't stand our neighbour. Every time we have a party he complains about the noise. He even complains about children playing in the park." "What a \_\_\_\_\_!"
5. "I'm afraid for my younger son. He's such a \_\_\_\_\_ always taking dangerous risks!"
6. After her husband retired, she became a real \_\_\_\_\_. She spends so much time watching television!

1.3.3. Compound adjectives are formed from two different words, and occasionally three. They are usually written with a hyphen: *good-looking*, *well-known*.

<u>compound adjective</u>	<u>meaning</u>
<i>a well-known person</i>	famous
<i>a badly-paid job</i>	a low salary
<i>a badly-behaved child</i>	acting in a bad way
<i>a brand-new coat</i>	completely new
<i>a badly-dressed young man</i>	wearing horrible clothes
<i>a well-made pair of shoes</i>	having a good quality
<i>a good-looking man</i>	handsome
<i>an easy-going person</i>	relaxed
<i>a well-off woman</i>	rich

Ex.39. Put 'well' in front of the adjectives in the box to form compound adjectives, then use them to complete the sentences.

brought up   documented   paid   spoken   informed   run   thought of thought out   known   travelled   mannered   kept
--

1. She knows a great deal about cultures. She's extremely \_\_\_\_\_.
2. You must have read his books. He's a very \_\_\_\_\_ author.
3. He was a quiet, pleasant, \_\_\_\_\_ young man.
4. Her parents had done a marvelous job with her. She was very \_\_\_\_\_.

5. You can introduce him to anyone and he won't let you down. He's extremely \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Everybody respects him in the community. He's very \_\_\_\_\_.
7. You can find out everything about the development of the Internet. It's very \_\_\_\_\_.
8. We stayed at a small, \_\_\_\_\_ hotel with a perfect service.
9. Every young person is looking for a \_\_\_\_\_ job now.
10. Most people are not very \_\_\_\_\_ about the disease.
11. I recommend going to this restaurant as the menu is \_\_\_\_\_.
12. They have a cosy little house with a \_\_\_\_\_ garden around it.

**1.3.4. It is common to combine a number and a singular noun to form a compound adjective: a five-day holiday, a five-year-old wine; a twenty minute walk etc.**

**Ex. 40. Complete the following expressions containing compound adjectives with words from the list below.**

*hotel, drive, girl, note, delay, ride, journey, team, meal, holiday*

<i>a fifteen-minute</i> _____	<i>a ten-year-old</i> _____
<i>a four-star</i> _____	<i>a two-hour</i> _____
<i>a five-pound</i> _____	<i>a twenty-minute</i> _____
<i>a twelve-men</i> _____	<i>a three-day</i> _____
<i>a fortnight</i> _____	<i>a three-course</i> _____

**Ex. 41. Match compound adjectives in A with nouns in B to form word-combinations.**

<b>A</b>	<b>B</b>
curly-haired	jeans
broad-shouldered	baby
tightly-fitted	story
low-slung	blouse
never-ending	shoes
sun-tanned	trousers
shocking-pink	youth
warm-hearted	girl
worn-out	woman
broken-down	bus

1.3.5. Another special group of compound adjectives are those where the second part is a preposition.

<u>compound adjective</u>	<u>meaning</u>
<i>an all-out strike</i>	total
<i>a burnt-out car</i>	nothing left in it after a fire
<i>a built-up area</i>	lots of buildings in it
<i>a hard-up student</i>	poor
<i>a drive-in movie</i>	you watch from your car
<i>a run-down area</i>	in poor condition
<i>worn-out boots</i>	can't be worn any more

Ex.42. Add a preposition from the box below to complete appropriate compound adjectives.

back up out off on of

1. She's been doing the same low-paid job for so long that she's really fed- \_\_\_ with it now.
2. The two cars were involved in a head-\_\_\_ collision.
3. He has a very casual, laid-\_\_\_ approach to life in general.
4. It'll never happen again. It's definitely a one-\_\_\_ situation.
5. He's a smash hit here but he's unheard-\_\_\_ in my country.
6. She bought a cut-\_\_\_ paper pattern and made her own dress.

Ex.43. Match words in A with words in B to form compound adjectives. Explain the meaning of the formed words. Think of the nouns they can be used with.

Example: *air* + *conditioned* = *air-conditioned* (room, house etc)

A	B
<u>air</u>	consuming
long	distance
sugar	controlled
remote	free
time	breaking
top	<u>conditioned</u>
off	peak
last	secret
bullet	proof
record	minute

Ex.44. Rewrite each of the sentences below, forming a compound adjective from the two words in *italics* and making any other changes necessary.

Example. The journey took *ten hours*. – It was a *ten-hour* journey.

Her hat *caught* everyone's eye. – She wore an *eye-catching* hat.

The doctor was **trained** in **Germany**. – He's a **Germany-trained** doctor.  
 They **make** these chocolates by **hand**. – These chocolates are **hand-made**.

## A

1. That thing **looks dangerous**. \_\_\_\_\_
2. Mr Reed is an accountant who was **born** in **London**. \_\_\_\_\_
3. She always **dresses** very **smartly**. \_\_\_\_\_
4. She had eyes **like** a **cat**. \_\_\_\_\_
5. We had to write a composition of **200 words**. \_\_\_\_\_
6. The sportsman was **famous** all over the **world**. \_\_\_\_\_
7. The machine is **operated** by **hand**. \_\_\_\_\_
8. The new director is an economist **educated** at **Oxford**. \_\_\_\_\_
9. We walked along a corridor which had a **red carpet**. \_\_\_\_\_
10. She had **fair hair**. \_\_\_\_\_

## B

1. It was painted **red** like the colour of **bricks**. \_\_\_\_\_
2. A building of **five stories** suddenly collapsed. \_\_\_\_\_
3. The tower has a **shape** like a **mushroom**. \_\_\_\_\_
4. My sister is very **conscious** of **dress**. \_\_\_\_\_
5. The meat **tasted awful**. \_\_\_\_\_
6. The memory was both **bitter** and **sweet**. \_\_\_\_\_
7. He always had a **bad temper**. \_\_\_\_\_
8. These tigers **eat men**. \_\_\_\_\_
9. The walls were as **blue** as the **sky**. \_\_\_\_\_
10. We'll have a guide who **speaks French**. \_\_\_\_\_
11. The ship sailed with a crew of **eight men**. \_\_\_\_\_
12. I heard a voice that **sounded strange**. \_\_\_\_\_
13. The new machinery, **built** in **China**, will arrive next month. \_\_\_\_\_
15. They have very **bad manners**. \_\_\_\_\_
16. The noise **split** our **ears**! \_\_\_\_\_
17. I'm afraid my wife **spends freely**. \_\_\_\_\_
18. The firm has its **base** in **Zurich**. \_\_\_\_\_
19. He certainly has **good intentions**. \_\_\_\_\_
20. My teenage son is **mad** about **football**. \_\_\_\_\_
21. Those cars are a very **high price**. \_\_\_\_\_



**Ex.45. Complete the compound word in each sentence, using a word given in the box.**

clothed handed hearted looking mouthed eared headed legged minded  
tempered

1. Thank you for helping me, and being so kind-\_\_\_\_\_ .
2. We searched all day, but had to return home empty-\_\_\_\_\_ .
3. Paul didn't have time to think, but jumped into the river fully-\_\_\_\_\_ .
4. It seems that long-\_\_\_\_\_ people can run faster.
5. Try to concentrate and remember! You are so absent-\_\_\_\_\_ .
6. Mary is very attractive, and her husband is good-\_\_\_\_\_ too.
7. Stop shouting! I'm tired of your loud-\_\_\_\_\_ comments!
8. Mike gets angry easily. He's a bit short-\_\_\_\_\_ .
9. Steve's book was dirty and dog-\_\_\_\_\_ .
10. Red-\_\_\_\_\_ people usually dislike being called 'Ginger'!

**Ex.46. Fill each of the blanks to form a new compound adjective. Use a dictionary if necessary.**

..... ..... -made .....	..... ..... -minded .....
..... ..... -proof .....	..... ..... -hearted .....
..... ..... -free .....	..... ..... -headed .....
..... ..... -necked .....	..... ..... -sighted .....

## 1.4. MINOR TYPES OF WORD-BUILDING

### 1.4.1. Blends

**Blends** (or portmanteau words) are new expressions formed by **combining two well-established words**, e.g. **brunch** = a meal that is a combination of **breakfast** and **lunch**; a **bedsit** = a room which serves as both a **bedroom** and **sitting room**.

<u>blend</u>	<u>meaning</u>
<b>smog</b>	= polluted fog ( <i>smoke</i> + <i>fog</i> )
<b>heliport</b>	= a place where helicopters can land and take off ( <i>helicopter</i> + <i>airport</i> )
<b>guesstimate</b>	= an approximate calculation ( <i>guess</i> + <i>estimate</i> ); to guesstimate (v)
<b>Chunnel</b>	= tunnel linking Britain and France ( <i>Channel</i> + <i>tunnel</i> )
<b>docusoap</b>	= TV series about real people using hidden cameras ( <i>documentary</i> + <i>soap opera</i> )
<b>breathalyzer</b>	= a device to find out how much alcohol a person has drunk ( <i>breath</i> + <i>analyse</i> )
<b>funtastic</b>	= fantastically good fun ( <i>fun</i> + <i>fantastic</i> )
<b>slow food</b> <b>(the slow foodies)</b>	In an age where <i>fast food</i> seems to make the world go round, there's a quiet revolution with a snail as its emblem. Followers of this movement take as much time as possible over their food, cooking it by slow, traditional methods and eat as slowly as necessary for maximum enjoyment

**Ex.47. What words have been combined to make these blends? What do you think they mean?**

infomercial .....  
 edutainment .....  
 motel .....  
 cybrary .....  
 vegeburger .....  
 shopoholic .....  
 swimathon .....  
 a film maniac .....  
 a sitcom .....  
 a flashmob .....

**Ex.48. Match the blends (A) with the kind of people they denote (B). What words have been combined to make these words?**

A	B
1) freegan 2) workaholic 3) seachanger 4) chugger 5) sheeple 6) flexitarian 7) furkid 8) fishmonger 9) middle youth 10) pyromaniac	a) they are professional people who opt for a change in lifestyle by moving to the seaside or country b) they eat food out of unopened packages from a rubbish container c) someone who are easily persuaded and tend to follow what others do d) they work long hours and can't think about anything else but their job e) a person who asks people to sign up for regular donations to charity f) a substitute child which we can love and care for as a parent would, but won't answer us back g) a vegetarian who can occasionally eat a little fish or meat to make life easier for other people h) a person over 30 with a responsible job and dependent children who still enjoys a good party or listening to loud rock music i) someone who is obsessed with setting fire to property j) a person who sells fish from a shop

**Ex.49. Match the blends (A) with the situation where they can be used (B). What words have been combined to make these words?**

A	B
1) irritainment 2) movieoke 3) plagiarhythm 4) rumint 5) shopgrifting 6) stagephoning 7) healthspan 8) homeshoring 9) orthorexia 10) infomania	a) acting out scenes from your favourite films in front of a specially designed screen b) downloading lyrics and tunes to incorporate them into our own musical creations c) watching some compulsive TV programmes d) wearing clothes you've just bought to the party and then taking it back to the shop to get your money back e) unwillingly overhearing sb's telephone conversation on the bus or train f) using intelligence information based on rumours g) a nervous condition characterized by an extreme obsession with healthy foods h) the period of our life when we are free from serious illness i) being distracted from daily tasks because of the constant urge to read or reply to electronic messages j) providing an improved level of service from local rather than overseas employees

**Ex.50. Explain the following.**

- 1) Oxbridge, Eurovision, Amex, Interpol, Swatch
- 2) camcorder, fanzine, docudrama, ecotastrophe
- 3) an anglophile, an egomaniac, a scandalmonger,
- 4) fantabulous, ginormous

**1.4.2. Sound-Imitation**

**Words** formed by this interesting type of word-building are made by **imitating different kinds of sounds** that may be produced by animals, birds, insects, human beings and inanimate objects: *twit, moo, crack etc.*

**Ex. 51. Say what kind of animals or inanimate objects produce the sounds which were used to form these words and then give their meaning.**

**Adjectives:** *cuckoo, gaga.*

**Verbs:** *buzz, moo, croak, bark, howl, meow, zoom, click, splash, crush, ding, puff, rattle, whistle, screech, bump, roar, slam, hiss, shriek, yell, hoot, flash, dash, rush.*

**1.4.3. Reduplication**

In reduplication new words are made by **doubling a stem**, either without any phonetic changes, e.g. *bye-bye, chi-chi*, or with a variation of the root-vowel or consonant, e.g. *ping-pong, chit-chat*.

**Ex.52. Match the definitions given below with the words in the box. Explain how they were formed.**

walkie-talkie   chit-chat   dilly-dally   flip-flop   hip-hop   bow-wow   chi-chi   topsy-turvy   nitty-gritty   lovey-dovey

- 1) an open summer shoe \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) a portable radio \_\_\_\_\_
- 3) conversation about things that are not very important \_\_\_\_\_
- 4) a dog (used by and to small children) \_\_\_\_\_
- 5) chic (about a girl) \_\_\_\_\_
- 6) in a state of a complete disorder or confusion \_\_\_\_\_
- 7) to waste time because you cannot decide about something \_\_\_\_\_
- 8) a type of popular culture among young people \_\_\_\_\_
- 9) too romantic \_\_\_\_\_
- 10) the basis and practical facts of a subject \_\_\_\_\_

Use some of the words from the box in the following sentences.

1. Anna's heart went \_\_\_\_\_ as she opened the letter.
2. As the men were engaged in their boring social \_\_\_\_\_, the women were gossiping.
3. He left his room all \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Let's get down to the \_\_\_\_\_ and work out the costs.
5. Don't \_\_\_\_\_, just get on with it!

**Ex.53. Look up the meanings of the following words in your dictionary. Think of situations where they can be used.**

*brain drain, dream team, zigzag, shilly-shally, doo-dah, riff-raff, willy-nilly, pitter-patter, hubble-bubble.*

Use some of these words in the sentences below.

1. He found himself drawn, \_\_\_\_\_, into the argument.
2. In the 90s, our country lost a lot of skilled young specialists because of the \_\_\_\_\_.
3. There was a \_\_\_\_\_ path along the cliff.
4. Where's the \_\_\_\_\_ to turn off TV?
5. We charge high prices to keep the \_\_\_\_\_ out.

## 2. IDIOMS

### Types of Idiom

#### a) Verb-plus-object.

*I'm **having second thoughts** about accepting that job offer. The pay's not enough [change your opinion or begin to have doubts].*

#### b) Prepositional phrases [preposition + noun phrase].

*It just happened **out of the blue** [completely unexpectedly].*

*Over 100 people were killed **in cold blood** by the soldiers [deliberately, without emotion].*

#### c) Compounds.

*Their connection with terrorism have always been **a stumbling block** in the party's political progress. [= an obstacle]*

#### d) Binomials [word + word].

*Let's toss a coin to see who starts. You call: **heads or tails**?*

*Sheila had flu last week, but she's **out and about** again now [= active].*

#### e) Similes [as + adjective + as + noun] [verb + like + noun].

*I slept really well so I feel **as fresh as a daisy** this morning [= extremely fresh and full of energy].*

*My new sweater **fits like a glove**. I'm so pleased with it [= fits extremely well].*

### f) Sayings/Maxims:

*I'm sorry, I can only donate 100 pounds. – Thanks anyway, **every little helps** [= even a small contribution is helpful].*

### g) Proverbs:

*What a day! My car broke down and my wallet has been stolen. – **It never rains but it pours** [= problems always happen together].*

*We all want to solve this problem, and I'm sure we'll find a solution. – Yes. **Where there's a will there's a way** [= if we really want to achieve sth, we can].*

## 2.1. PARTS OF THE BODY IDIOMS

### 2.1.1. Back

**behind sb's back** = when sb is not looking, not present, or not informed: *You shouldn't say nasty things like that about Ruth behind her back.*

**to get (sb) off one's/sb's back** = cause sb to leave sb alone or in peace: *Get off my back, will you, Sarah! Can't you stop chattering all the time!*

**to know sth like the back of your palm** = to know sth very well: *I lived here for years, and I know that part of London like the back of my palm.*

**to put/get sb's back up** = to make sb angry or offend sb: *He's completely tactless – his rudeness really gets my back up.*

**to turn one's back on sb/sth** = reject sb/sth, refuse to face a problem: *His parents finally turned their backs on Tony when he didn't invite them to his wedding./ Why do you always turn your back on difficulties just when you're needed?*

### 2.1.2. Brain

**behind sb's back** = when sb is not looking, not present, or not informed: *You shouldn't say nasty things like that about Ruth behind her back.*

**to get (sb) off one's/sb's back** = cause sb to leave sb alone or in peace: *Get off my back, will you, Sarah! Can't you stop chattering all the time!*

**to know sth like the back of your palm** = to know sth very well: *I lived here for years, and I know that part of London like the back of my palm.*

**to put/get sb's back up** = to make sb angry or offend sb: *He's completely tactless – his rudeness really gets my back up.*

**to turn one's back on sb/sth** = reject sb/sth, refuse to face a problem: *His parents finally turned their backs on Tony when he didn't invite them to his wedding./ Why do you always turn your back on difficulties just when you're needed?*

### 2.1.3. Ear

**to have [got] an ear for sth** = be able to appreciate sth, such as music

**to play sth by ear** = to play music that you have heard but not seen written down

**up to one's ears in sth** = deeply involved in sth: work, debt, problems

**to smile/grin from ear to ear** = to smile very widely

**to be all ears** = to be very keen to hear what sb is going to tell you: *I'm all ears.*

**keep your ears open** = to always be listening in order to find out what is happening or to hear some useful information

**turn a deaf ear (to sth)** = to be unwilling to listen to what sb is saying/asking

**ear-worm** = a tune that you keep thinking about in your head

**feel one's ears burning** = to feel embarrassed, ashamed etc: *I'm sure someone is talking about me – I can feel my ears burning.*

### 2.1.4. Eye

**have [got] an eye for sth** = be able to appreciate sth, such as fashion.

**with an eye to sth/doing sth** = with the aim of doing sth

**a black eye** = an area of severe bruising around the eye, caused by an accident or deliberate blow: *How did you get that black eye?*

**an eye sore** = sth very unpleasant to look at: *That ugly building was a total eyesore.*

**an eye for an eye** (saying)

**up to one's eyes in sth** = deeply involved in sth

**with one's eyes open** = fully aware of what you're doing

**turn a blind eye to sth** = to pretend not to see sth

**the apple of sb's eye** = loved very much by sb: *Ben was always the apple of his father's eye.*

**close/shut your eyes to sth** = to ignore sth or pretend that you do not know it is happening

**keep an eye on sth** = guard/protect sth

**keep your eyes peeled [for]** = to watch carefully and continuously for sth

**make eyes at sb** = to flirt with sb

**not be able to take one's eyes off sb/sth** = to not be able to stop yourself looking at sb/sth: *He couldn't take his eyes off the attractive girl sitting opposite him.*

### 2.1.5. Foot (feet)

**from head to foot** = all over your body

**cold feet** = loss of nerve or confidence

**have your feet on the ground** = to be/remains practical and sensible

**have sth at your feet** = to have sth in your power or command

**put your feet up** = to relax

**get off on the wrong foot** = argue or disagree at the beginning of a relationship

**put your foot down** = to adopt a firm policy when faced with opposition or disobedience

**put your foot in it** = say or do sth tactless or embarrassing: *'I asked him how his wife was. How was I to know she was dead?' – 'Oh, you really put your foot in it!'*

**to dig your heels in** = to refuse to change your opinions or plans, even though other people want you to: *My boss wanted to abandon the project, but I dug my heels in and asked that the management look at it again.*

### 2.1.6. Face

**face to face** = in the presence of sb/sth: *You'll have to meet this problem face to face./ As he turned the corner, he came face to face with a statue of a woman.*

**in the face of** = although confronted with sth: *He was determined to stay calm in the face of all the opposition.*

**to sb's face** = directly; in the presence of sb: *Would you really call her a liar to her face?*

**on the face of it** = used to say that sth seems true but that you think there may be other facts about it which are not yet clear: *It looks, on the face of it, like a minor change in the regulations./ On the face of it, his suggestions make sense.*

**familiar/the same old face** = sb you know: *It's the same old faces.*

**new/different face** = sb you haven't seen before: *There are a few new faces in class this year.*

**one's face falls** = you show by the expression of your face that you are disappointed or dismayed: *When he began to realize how committed he should really be, his face fell, and he knew it was too great a sacrifice for him to make.*

**make faces (at sb)** = to change your expression to make people laugh or to show you're angry, disappointed etc: *Emma was making faces at me through the window.*

**keep a straight face** = to not laugh or smile at sth you think is funny: *He wanted to laugh but managed to keep a straight face.*

### 2.1.7. Finger

**have (got) green fingers** = to be able to grow flowers, plants etc successfully: *Potted plants always die on me. I'm afraid I haven't got green fingers.*

**light-fingered** = likely to steal things: *He was notorious for being light-fingered, so people tried to avoid his company.*

**have (got)/keep one's finger on the pulse (of sth)** = to have an up-to-date knowledge of sth; to be fully aware of sth: *A successful politician is one who keeps his finger on the pulse of the changing mood of the voters.*

**turn sb round one's little finger** = to be able to make sb do what you want them to do.

**one's fingers are all thumbs** = you are slow and clumsy in doing things with your hands.



### 2.1.8. Hair

**a hair's breadth** = a very small distance or amount: *He escaped death by a hair's breadth – if the other car had been going a bit faster he would certainly have died.*

**make sb's hair stand on end** = to cause sb to feel extreme fear or horror: *Their story was really interesting, but hearing about the dangers they faced made my hair stand on end.*

**not to turn a hair** = not to show a strong emotion such as fear, dismay etc: *He didn't turn a hair as the judge sentenced him to 20 years' imprisonment.*

**Keep your hair on!** = Keep calm!/Don't get angry!

### 2.1.9. Hand

**(close) at hand** = near in place or time

**off hand** = without thinking about sth very much

**off sb's hands** = no longer the responsibility of sb

**on the one hand ... on the other hand**

**Hands off!** = do not touch or interfere

**hand in hand** = closely connected

**with your bare hands** = without using a tool, weapon, machine etc

**to give/lend sb a (helping) hand** = help sb

**to get your hands on sth** = to succeed in getting sth

**to get out of hand** = to become uncontrollable

**to have sth on your hands** = as a responsibility of sth

**to try your hand at (doing) sth** = to try to do sth you haven't done before

**the left hand doesn't know what the right hand is doing**

**to live from hand to mouth** = to live poorly; to not be able to save any money

### 2.1.10. Head

**above your head** = beyond your ability to understand

**to go to your head: 1) of alcohol; 2) of success** = make you conceited

**(be) head over heels in love** = to be madly in love

**to keep/lose your head** = remain/fail to remain calm

**to keep your head above water** = avoid succumbing to difficulties, esp. falling into debt

**to make head or tail of sth** = not to understand sth at all: *I can't make head or tail of this picture – it's too abstract!*

**from head to toe/foot** = all over your body

**a bighead** = sb who is very conceited

**to hold your head high** = to act with confidence in your worth, abilities etc: *Have you noticed that since she passed all her exams she feels she can hold her head high again?*

**to fall head over heels** = fall in love quickly

**to have a (good) head for figures/heights** = to be able to count well/not to be afraid of heights

**to have (got) one's head in the clouds** = live in an unreal, dream-like world  
**Two heads are better than one** (saying)

### 2.1.11. Heart

**at heart** (= **in your real nature**) = in one's heart of hearts  
**by heart** – if you know sth by heart, you remember all of it exactly  
**from the (bottom of your) heart** = with sincere feeling  
**heart to heart** = privately, confidentially  
**(one's) heart and soul** = total commitment, great devotion, energy  
**to have (got) a heart of gold** = to have a generous and helpful nature  
**to have (got) a heart of stone** = to have a hard, unfeeling nature  
**to break one's heart** = to make sb very unhappy by ending a relationship with them  
**to have the heart** = to be insensitive or hard-hearted enough  
**to lose heart** = to become discouraged  
**to eat one's heart out** = to feel jealous/sad about sth  
**to pour out your heart (to sb)** = to tell sb all about your thoughts, feelings etc.  
**to set your heart on sth** = to decide you very much want to have sth  
**to take sth to heart** = take sth seriously; be much affected/upset by sth  
**one's heart is in one's mouth** = you feel sudden fear, worry etc  
**one's heart bleeds for sb** = you feel sorry or pity for sb  
**one's heart misses a beat** = you feel sudden fear or other strong emotions  
**one's heart sinks** = you feel suddenly sad, disappointed or afraid  
**deep in sb's heart:** *Deep in his heart, he wanted Laura back.*

### 2.1.12. Leg

**to pull sb's leg** = to tell sb sth that is not true, as a joke: *I believed Ian when he told me he'd lost his job, but I later found out from his wife that he was pulling my leg.*  
**leg and leg** (= **neck and neck**) – equal, or nearly so, in a race, game etc.  
**to give a leg up** = to render timely assistance  
**to make a leg** = to make a bow, especially in an old-fashioned obedience  
**to set on his legs** – so to provide for sb that he is able to earn his living without further help

### 2.1.13. Mouth

**down in the mouth** = unhappy or discouraged: *'Why is he looking so down in the mouth?' – 'They say his horse was ill and had to be put to sleep.'*  
**one's heart is in one's mouth** = you feel sudden fear, worry, etc: *My heart was in my mouth when I was going to take my first examination in mathematics.*  
**to put words in(to) sb's mouth** = to suggest that sb has said sth when he has not: *You're putting words into my mouth! I've never said anything about changing my job.*

**to take the words out of sb's mouth** = to say exactly what sb else had intended to say: *You've taken the words right out of my mouth! How amazing! And I didn't even know you felt the same way as I did.*

**to make sb's mouth water** = to cause saliva to flow in the mouth: *Just looking at their cookery books is enough to make my mouth water!*

#### 2.1.14. Nose

**under sb's nose** = obvious and visible

**to have [got] a nose for sth** = to be able to detect sth: *A newspaper reporter must be someone with a good nose for stories with human interest.*

**to turn up one's nose (at sb/sth)** = to behave in a superior way: *There's no need to turn up your nose at simple plain home cooking after all your grand business lunches.*

**to pay through the nose (for sth)** = to have to pay too high a price for sth

**as plain as the nose on your face** = very clear

**to thumb your nose at sth** = to show that you do not respect rules, laws etc, or you do not care what sb thinks of you

#### 2.1.15. Shoulder

**shoulder to shoulder** = 1) having the same aim (= side by side); 2) physically close together: *They stood shoulder to shoulder to applaud the actors (= side by side).*

**to shrug one's shoulders** = to raise your shoulders to show you don't know or care

**to give sb a cold shoulder** = to completely ignore sb

**to rub shoulders with** = to meet and spend time with people, especially rich and famous people: *As a reporter he has to rub shoulders with all the big names in politics.*

#### 2.1.16. Tongue

**tongue-tied** = sb who is too shy or nervous to speak

**tongue-twister** = a long word or phrase which is very difficult to say quickly or correctly

**tongue-in-cheek** – a tongue-in-cheek remark is said as a joke, not seriously (=with your tongue in your cheek)

**to have a sharp tongue** = to often talk in a way that shows you are angry

**to have a silver tongue** = to be able to talk in a way that makes people like you

**to hold one's tongue** = to remain silent

**to loosen sb's tongue** = to make sb talk a lot: *The wine had certainly loosened his tongue*

**on the tip of your tongue** – if a word is on the tip of your tongue, you know it but cannot remember it

**Lost your tongue?** – used to ask sb why they are not talking

### 2.1.17. Tooth (teeth)

**long in the tooth** = old: He's getting a bit long in the tooth to play football.

**to have a sweet tooth** = to like things that taste of sugar

**to fight tooth and nail** = to try with a lot of effort or determination to do sth

**to get your teeth into sth** = to start to do sth with a lot of energy and determination

**to cut your teeth on sth** = to get your first experience of doing sth and learn the basic skills: *Both reporters cut their journalistic teeth on the same provincial newspaper.*

**in spite of his teeth** = in opposition to his settled purpose or resolution, although he snarl and show his teeth like an angry dog

**his teeth are drawn** = his power of doing mischief is taken from him.

**by the skin of your teeth** = to only just succeed in doing sth, and nearly fail to do it

### 2.1.18. Thumb

**under one's thumb** = under the influence or power of sb [Ср. «под каблуком»]

**thumbs up/down** – when a plan or idea is officially accepted or not accepted.

**rule of thumb** = a rough, guess-work measure, based on practical experience [ср. «приблизженный метод»]: *As a general rule of thumb, children at this age should not spend more than one hour on homework.*

**to bite one's thumb at sb** = to insult them

**to be all fingers and thumbs** = to be unable to do sth in which you have to make small careful movements with your fingers: *Would you do up these buttons for me? I seem to be all thumbs today.*

**to stand/stick out like a sore thumb** = to be very noticeable because they are very different from everyone or everything else [ср. «как шишка на ровном месте»]: *You stick out like a sore thumb in that uniform.*

## 2.2. ANIMAL IDIOMS

**to have ants in your pants** = you are so excited about sth that you can't keep still

**busy as a bee** = sb is very busy or is moving around quickly doing lots of things

**to have a bee in your bonnet** = sb is very worried or concerned about sth and they talk about it all the time

**like a bear with a sore head** = so irritable: *What's wrong with Tom this morning? He's like bear with a sore head.*

**early bird (=early riser)** – sb who gets up very early in the morning

**the bird has flown** – used to say that the person you're looking for has already left or escaped

**a little bird told me** – when you give sb some information but don't want them to know who told you: *A little bird told me you'd got a new job.*

**to kill two birds with one stone** = to achieve two things with one action: *As I had to go to Swansea on business, I decided to kill two birds with one stone and visit my old school as well.*

**The early bird catches the worm** = (proverb) if you do sth early or before other people, you will be successful.

**Every bird likes its own nest** (proverb)

**Birds of a feather (flock together)** (proverb) = people with similar interests (try to stick together)

**A bird in the hand (is worth two in the bush)** (proverb) – used to say that it is better to keep what you have than to risk losing it by trying to get more

**like a red rag to a bull** = very likely to make sb angry or upset: *Just mentioning his ex-wife's name was like a red rag to a bull.*

**to take the bull by the horns** = to bravely and confidently deal with a difficult, dangerous, or unpleasant problem: *She decided to take the bulls by the horns and organize things for herself.*

**to have butterflies in your stomach** = to be very nervous about sth you have to do

**butterfly kiss** = a kiss with one's eyelashes, that is, stroking the cheek with one's eyelashes

**a catnap** = a short sleep in a chair (not in a bed)

**to let the cat out of the bag** = to tell sb a secret, especially without intending to do it: *We were hoping to keep the wedding a secret, but my mother soon let the cat out of the bag.*

**like the cat that got the cream** = very pleased and proud about sth you have achieved

**like a cat on a hot tin roof (= on hot bricks)** = very agitated, restless or anxious: *She couldn't sit still when she learnt she was chosen for the competition – she behaved like a cat on hot bricks.*

**to put a cat among the pigeons** – to do or say sth which causes trouble or makes people very angry: *The study has put a cat among the pigeons by claiming that the effects of expensive antidepressant pills can be mimicked by dummy pills.*

**there's not enough room to swing a cat** – used humorously to say that an area is not very big: *My flat is tiny – there's not enough room to swing a cat!*

**to play cat and mouse with** = to manoeuvre in a way designed alternately to provoke an opponent: *The image here is of the way that a cat plays with a mouse, pretending to release and then pouncing on it again.*

**Cat got your tongue?** – used to ask sb why they are not talking

**All cats are grey in the dark** (proverb) = the qualities that distinguish people from one another are obscured in some circumstances, and if they can't be perceived they don't matter.

**When the cat's away the mice will play** (proverb) – used to say that people will not behave well when the person who has authority over them is not there.

**until/till the cows come home** = for long periods without being bored: *She loved tennis and could watch it until the cows came home.*

**Chicken-hearted** = cowardly

**Don't count your chickens before they're hatched** = not assume sth before it happens

**Children and chicken must always be pickin'** = are always hungry and ready to eat food

**curses like chickens come home to roost** = curses fall on the head of the curser, as chickens which stray during the day return to their roost at night

**crocodile tears** = pretending to be sad or unhappy: *Don't be fooled. She's not a bit sad; they're just crocodile tears.*

**it's a dog's life** – used for saying that life is not fair and is full of troubles: *It's hard work – not much money, no time to enjoy yourself. It's a dog's life.*

**to go to the dogs** = 1) not to take care of oneself: *Harold has really gone to the dogs since his wife died. Looking at him now, it's hard to believe he was once a successful barrister.*  
2) to deteriorate, to become bad: *He's always saying that the country is going to the dogs.*

**dog eat dog** – a situation in which people compete very hard and will do anything to be successful: *It's dog eat dog in the television history.*

**dog-eared (adj)** – a dog-eared page or book has been used so much that the corners have become damaged

**dog in the manger** = sb who does not want or need sth, but will not let other people have it: *I hate our neighbours' dog-in-the-manger attitude – they don't want the parking space but they won't let us have it.*

**to let sleeping dogs lie** = to leave sb or sth alone if they might cause you trouble: *Don't ask him again. It's better to let sleeping lie.*

**you can't teach an old dog new tricks** – (saying) used for saying that it is very difficult to make sb do sth in a new way when they have been doing it their own way for a long time

**Better to be a live dog than a dead lion** = there are some situations when being a coward is an advantage

**for donkey's years (old-fashioned)** = for a long time: *I wonder what Julia's doing these days? I haven't seen her for donkey's years.*

**a lame duck** – a person that is having problems and needs help: *She's such a failure in many ways – a typical lame duck. We should help her.*

**(like) a fish out of water** = (feel) very unhappy and uncomfortable he's in an unfamiliar place

**a big fish/cheese** = an important and influential person

**a big fish in a small pond** = sb who's important or powerful, but only in a small organization

**a cold fish** = sb who is not friendly and does not show their feelings

**to fish in troubled waters** – to make profit out of trouble or upheaval

**there are plenty more fish in the sea** = used to tell sb whose relationship has ended that there are other people they can have a relationship with: *You're upset now, I know. But you'll soon forget her – after all, there are plenty more fish in the sea.*

**(be) a fly on the wall** = be able to watch what people are doing without being noticed by them: *I'd love to be a fly on the wall when the American and Russian leaders meet for a private talk.*

**wouldn't hurt a fly** = is totally harmless: *You don't need to be afraid of him. He wouldn't hurt a fly.*

**to fox sb** = to outwit: *He managed to fox his pursuers by changing cars three times and then escaping in disguise.*

**(have) a frog in my throat** – to be unable to speak because your throat is dry or blocked: *Can I have a glass of water? I've got a frog in my throat.*

**gets my goat** = annoys me: *I don't mind helping John with his English, what gets my goat is the way he seems to take my help for granted.*

**guinea pig**: *I was once a guinea pig in a medical experiment to test a new drug.*

**a wild goose chase** = a search for sth which has no hope of being successful: *I went all over the place trying to get what I wanted but I had no success at all. It was a wild-goose chase.*

**to cook one's goose** = to put an end to hopes: *Turning up half an hour late for the interview really cooked his goose.*

**to kill the goose that lays golden eggs** = to destroy the thing that brings you profit and success

**wouldn't say 'Boo' to a goose** = to be timid, unable to hurt anybody: *You are not frightened of Mr Biggs, are you? He wouldn't say 'Boo' to a goose.*

**hen party** = a party for women only, that happens just before one of them gets married

**to have kittens** = to be in a state of panic: *When I told my parents that Paul and I have decided to call off the wedding they're going to have kittens.*

**as strong as a horse/ox/bull** = physically strong

**a dark horse** = sb with a secret, especially a secret ability, skill etc, that surprises you when you finally discover it: *He's such a dark horse; he does not tell people much about himself.*

**to hold one's horses** = to wait, to be patient

**to bet on/pick the wrong horse** = to choose the wrong thing/person for a particular purpose

**to flog a dead horse** = to waste effort on sth that we have no chance of succeeding at: *You're flogging a dead horse trying to get Harry to change his mind!*

**to get on/off your high horse** = to behave/stop behaving as if you know more or are better

**to put the cart before the horse** = to do sth before another thing that you should have done first

**straight from the horse's mouth** – when we've got some information directly from the person responsible for it

**never/don't look a gift horse in the mouth** – used to tell sb to be grateful for sth that has been given to them instead of asking questions about it or finding sth wrong with it



**I could eat a horse** = I'm very hungry

**That's a horse of a different colour** = a situation far from what you expected

**the lion's share of sth** = the biggest part of sth: *The firm has captured the lion's share of the UK market.*

**to monkey around/about** = to behave in a silly or careless way: *This machine is complicated and dangerous so don't monkey about with it.*

**monkey business** = bad or dishonest behavior

**monkey bars (AmE) (= BrE climbing frame)** = a structure of bars for children to climb and play on

**to make a monkey out of sb** = to make sb seem stupid

**not to give a monkey's** = to not care at all about sth: *To be honest I don't give a monkey's what they do.*

**a pig in a poke** = sth that you have bought without seeing it first [cp. «КОТ В МЕШКЕ»]

**pig-headed** = stubborn: *My wife will never admit that she's wrong, even when she knows she is. She's so pig-headed.*

**pigs might fly** – when sb says sth that we think will never happen: *He might let you have it cheaply, since you're a relative – Yes, and pigs might fly!*

**to make a pig's ear of sth** – if sb does sth very badly

**to make a pig of oneself** = to eat much: *That's the last time I invite Steve for a meal. He really made a pig of himself last night.*

**piggy bank** = a container used by children for saving money in, sometimes shaped like a pig

**the rat race** = the unpleasant situation experienced by people working in big cities, when they continuously compete for success and have a lot of stress in their lives: *After years of commuting from Brighton to London, he decided to get out of the rat race and buy a small farm in Wales.*

**to smell a rat** = to guess that sth wrong or dishonest is happening

**to look like a drowned rat** = to look very wet and uncomfortable

**like rats leaving/deserting a sinking ship** = in a hurry to leave when problems develop

**To separate the sheep from the goats** = to group people or things into superior and inferior

**(to move) at a snail's pace** = very slowly

**a snake in the grass** – sb who pretends to be your friend but is really an enemy.

**mad as a (cut) snake (= mad as a hatter; mad as a March hare)** = completely crazy

**stag party/night** = a party for men only, especially on the night before a man gets married.

**a wolf in sheep's clothing** = a person or thing that appears friendly or harmless but is really hostile and dangerous: *He looks kind and gentle but he's not like that at all. – You're right. He really is a wolf in sheep's clothing.*

**a lone wolf** = sb who does not mix socially with other people.



**to be food for worms** = to be dead

**to satisfy the worm** = to appease one's hunger

**to worm out information** = to elicit information indirectly and piecemeal

### 2.3. COLOUR IDIOMS

**to show one's true colours** = to reveal one's real character

**with flying colours** = with great success

#### 2.3.1. Blue

(is associated with: 1) deprivation – **to feel blue**; 2) sb of noble birth – **blue blood**; 3) sth unexpected – **out of the blue**; **a bolt from the blue**).

In English, if something comes as a complete surprise, we say **it's a bolt from the blue**.

*The news that Prime Minister was going to resign came quite out of the blue.*

In English, if things happen extremely rarely, we can say they happen '**once in a blue moon**.'

In English, if we say something until we are **blue in the face**, we waste time and effort because we won't get any results.

**once in a blue moon** = very, very rarely

**blue-collar workers** = unskilled workers

**blue-eyed boy/golden boy** = a favoured person

#### 2.3.2. Black

(is associated with: 1) sth depressing or without hope – **a black future**; 2) anger – **to look as black as thunder**; 3) illegality or incorrectness – **black market**; **a black mark**; **blackmail**).

In English, if we have situation in which it's easy for someone to understand what's wrong and what's right, we say '**it's black and white**.'

**A black hole** is something which has no bottom, and everything put in it just disappears.

**To be in sb's black books/on sb's black list** – to disapprove of somebody so that they should be avoided.

**The black sheep of the family** – someone who is regarded by other members of their family as a failure or embarrassment.

*I'm not going to play football again. I was black and blue all over after the match last Saturday.*

**The devil is not so black as he is painted** (proverb) = something or someone is not so bad as it/they may seem at first sight.

#### 2.3.3. Brown

In English, if someone is extremely sun-burnt, we say '**she's as brown as a berry**'.

**To be/feel browned off** = (informal) to feel annoyed, fed up or bored.

### 2.3.4. Gold

**as good as gold** – (usually a child or a pet) very well-behaved

In English, if someone is very kind and helpful, we say they've got **a heart of gold**.

In English, if something is extremely useful, we say it's **worth its weight in gold**.

### 2.3.5. Green

(is associated with: 1) lack of experience – **the green years**; 2) care for the environment – **green tourism, the Green Party; the Greens; green fingers**; 3) envy – **green with envy**; 4) nausea – **to look green; to go/turn green**)

**to have green fingers** = to be a good gardener and to be able to make plants grow very easily

**The grass is always greener on the other side** (saying) – used to say that other people are always in a better situation than you, even when they are not

**to be green with envy** = to feel unhappy because sb else has sth that we want

**to give sb/sth the green light** = to give permission for sth to start.

**the green stuff** (= greenness) (informal) = money.

### 2.3.6. Grey

(is associated with: 1) lack of clarity – **a grey area**; 2) brains = **grey matter, grey cells**)

The management says that the agreement is a grey area that must be made clear in proper discussions.

There's common prejudice that girls who are *very beautiful must automatically be lacking in grey matter* – so-called 'dumb blonds.'

### 2.3.7. Pink

**to be tickled pink** = to be very pleased or amused

**to see pink elephants** = to see things that are not really there, because you are drunk

**in the pink** (informal) = in extremely good health and spirits

### 2.3.8. Red

(is associated with: 1) anger – **to see red; like a red rag to a bull**; 2) danger – **red alert; a red flag**; 3) special importance – **a red-letter day; to give sb a red carpet treatment**; 4) left-wing in politics – **red point of view**; 5) bureaucracy – **red tape**)

**to paint the town red** – to go out to celebrate something, usually while drinking a lot of alcohol

**I caught him red-handed** – used to say if you find sb doing sth bad or illegal while they are doing it

**it's like a red rag to a bull** – when sb does sth that is certain to create an angry response.

**a red herring** is something unimportant that takes attention away from the main subject

### 2.3.9. Silver

In English, if you have a high social position and have been rich all your life, we say you were *'born with a silver spoon in your mouth.'*

**silver-tongued** = sb who speaks in such a pleasant way they can make other people do things for them

**speech is silver:** *Speech is silver* (or 'silvern'), *silence is golden* [= part of an old oriental proverb, pointing to the advantage of keeping one's own counsel]

**thirty pieces of silver** – the sum of money that Judas Iscariot received from the chief priest for the betrayal of his Master, hence used proverbially of a bribe or *'blood-money'*

**Every cloud has a silver lining** (proverb) = a situation which seems bad but in fact has some advantages to it

### 2.3.10. White

(is associated with: 1) purity – *as white as snow; whiter than white*; 2) being pale – *as white as a sheet*)

In English, if someone is very pale because they are ill or shocked or scared, we say they're *as white as a sheet*.

**a white-knuckle ride** = sth very exciting or scary

**a white lie** = a lie that you tell someone in order to protect them or avoid hurting their feelings

**a white elephant** = something that is completely useless, although it may have cost a lot of money.

**a white flag** = a sign that you accept that you have failed or been defeated.

**a white wedding** = a traditional wedding at which the bride is wearing a long white dress.

### 2.3.11. Yellow

(is associated with: 1) race: – (not polite) *the yellow race*; 2) cowardliness – *yellow-bellied, yellow-livered*; 3) a taxi – *a yellow cab*; 4) pulp fiction: – *a yellow book*).

In English, if someone behaves like a coward, we say *'He's a yellow belly.'*

The Yellow Press – sensational and jingoist newspapers and journalism

**Yellow Jack** = the yellow fever, also the flag displayed from naval hospitals and vessels in quarantine

## 2.4. FOOD IDIOMS

**a rotten/bad apple** (informal) = a bad person in a group whose behavior may have a corrupting influence on the rest

**apple of discord** = a subject of dissension

**An apple a day keeps the doctor away** (proverb)

**to go bananas** – said when sb is very emotional and starts shouting and behaving in a crazy way.

**(be your) bread and butter** = an activity/job you do to get the money you need: *Taxi-driving is his bread and butter though he also writes music.*

**the breadwinner** = the member of a family who earns the money to support the others.

**to know which side your bread is buttered** = to know which people to be nice to in order to get advantage for yourself

**I haven't got a bean** – said when you have no money at all.

**to be full of beans** – said about sb who is full of energy: *I've had a several cups of coffee today. That's why I'm full of beans!*

**a piece of cake** = sth that is very easy

**cakes and ale** = merrymaking: *Life is not all cakes and ale* (proverb).

**you can't have your cake and eat it** – used to refer to the fact that two good things are impossible to do or have at the same time: *He wants to stay with his wife but still see his girlfriend – talk about having your cake and eating it!*

**the icing on the cake** – refers to sth that makes a good situation even better

**sell/go like hot cakes** = be sold quickly and in large quantities

**a bad egg** = sb who is bad or dishonest: *My boss promised me a pay rise and then he threatened to fire me. He's a bad egg.*

**to have egg on your face** = to be left feeling stupid or embarrassed because of sth you did: *You'll have egg on your face if your plan doesn't work.*

**Don't put all your eggs in one basket** = (saying) you should never rely on only one plan—in case it goes wrong.

**the fruit(s) of sth:** I'm looking forward to retirement and having time to enjoy the fruits of my labour [= the results of my hard work]

**the fruits of the earth** – all the natural things that the earth produces, such as fruit, vegetables, or minerals [Ср. «дары природы»]

**to bear fruit** = to produce a positive result: *At last our work is bearing fruit.*

It's a case of sour grapes – said about sb who pretends not to be impressed by sth because they are jealous: *When my colleague won a lottery, I told him I wasn't really interested in money, so I'm not jealous at all... but it's not true. I wish I was rich! – Yes, it's a case of sour grapes.*

**One man's meat is another man's poison** (proverb) = Tastes differ

**to be easy meat** (BrE, informal) – sb who is easy to defeat, deceive, or hurt

**the meat and potatoes** (AmE, informal) – the most important/basic parts of a discussion

**It's no use crying over spilt milk** (proverb) – you shouldn't waste time feeling sorry about an earlier mistake or problem that can't be changed

**a nut (informal)** = sb who is crazy, or behaves strangely: *My dad is such a nut.*

**to be off your nut (BrE informal)** = to be crazy

**tough/hard nut (informal)** = sb who is difficult to deal with: *He may have suffered a bit in his old age but he's still a tough nut.*

**a hard/tough nut to crack** = a difficult problem or situation: *Celtic have lost only once this season and will be a hard nut to crack.*

**in a nutshell** = in short; in a few words

**like two peas in a pod** – said about two people who look very similar: *Though they are not identical twins, they really look like two peas in a pod.*

**pea-brained (informal)** – stupid: a pea-brained idiot

**as easy as pie** – said about sth that seems to you really easy.

**to have a finger in many pies** = to be involved in lots of different activities.

**pie in the sky** = sth that is agreeable to contemplate but very unlikely to be realized: *We are sick and tired of all those pie-in-the-sky promises our government is making!*

**a hot potato:** In English, if there's a delicate issue and people can't agree we call it a 'hot potato'.

**a couch potato** = sb who spends a lot of time sitting and watching television.

**The proof of the pudding (is in the eating)** (proverb) – used to say that you can only know whether sth is good or bad after you have tried it

**not my cup of tea** – said about sth we don't like very much: *Oh, jazz... it's not my cup of tea*

In English, if there is sth we would never do, we can say 'I wouldn't do it for all the tea in China.'

**the salt of the earth** = sb who is ordinary but good and

**to take sth with a pinch/grain of salt (informal)** = to not completely believe sb/sth

## 2.5. PIECES OF CLOTHES IDIOMS

**too big for one's boots** = too conceited; feeling that you are much better than other people: *Sue's really been getting too big for her boots since she became the Managing Director's secretary.*

**to go cap in hand (to sb)** = to ask for money or help in a very respectful way, from sb who has a lot more power than you: *Elderly people should receive a heating allowance every winter, instead of having to go cap in hand to the government.*

**the emperor's (new) clothes (= the king's new clothes)** – used about a situation when everyone pretends to understand or admit sth that is not really sensible or special, because they think they will seem stupid if they do not: *I don't believe anyone really likes modern music – it's just the emperor's new clothes.*

**Cut your coat according to your cloth** (proverb) = to spend within the limit of what money you have/what material is available.

**to keep sth under your hat** = to keep sth a secret: *I don't want everyone to know I'm leaving, so please keep it under your hat.*

**to pass the hat (around)** = to collect money from a group of people, asking each of them to give some, so that you can buy or do sth: *If a workman was injured, his mates collected money for his family by passing around a hat.*

**to pull sth out of a/the hat (= to pull a rabbit out of a/the hat)** = to suddenly produce a solution to a problem, when no one is expecting it: *If their manager keeps pulling good young players out of the hat, the Rangers will be hard to beat this season.*

**to be in sb's pocket** = to be controlled by sb because they give you money or support: *In financial terms, the local authorities are in the pocket of the central government.*

**to dip/dig into your pocket** = to pay for sth expensive with your own money: *All he's done is dig in his pocket whenever we've asked, and laid out hundreds of thousands of dollars.*

**in sb's shoes** = in sb's position: *If I were in his shoes, I'd resign immediately.*

**to put oneself in sb's shoes/place** = consider what you would do if you were in the position of sb else.

**to pull one's socks up** = to take command of oneself; become more purposeful; improve your behaviour: *You really must pull your socks up if you want to beat Jackson in the competition.*

**to roll up one's sleeves** = to prepare oneself for future work: *It's time you rolled up your sleeves and started earning your living.*

**to have (got) sth up one's sleeve** = to keep a piece of information until the best moment to mention it: *I know Max has always got some idea up his sleeve that he suddenly brings out to amaze us all!*

**to catch sb with his pants/trousers down** = to confront, trap, or deceive sb when he is unprepared or not being attentive: *They maintained full guard in case a second attack should catch them with their trousers down.*

### 3. WHAT'S IN A NAME

**from Adam:** *I don't know him from Adam* (= I don't know him at all).

**an Achilles heel** = a person's only vulnerable spot; a serious or fatal weakness.

**Aunt Sally** = a person or thing that is a target for attack or criticism [a figure, usually of an old woman's head, that is set up at fairgrounds and fetes as a target for balls or other objects. The aim is to knock off the head or to knock the figure down].

**Big shot** – a very important and influential person: His father's a big shot, and he thinks he is, too. [ср. «большая шишка»]

**Bob's your uncle!** – used to say that sth will be easy to do: *Just copy the disc, and Bob's your uncle!*

**Bobby** (old-fashioned) = a policeman in Britain

**Bully** – sb who frightens or hurts people who are smaller or weaker than they are: *Don't take me for a bully. Of course they're smaller and weaker than me. I wouldn't dare hit them otherwise.*

**Busybody** – sb who tries to interfere in what other people are doing: *She's always trying to interfere in other people's lives. – Yes, she's a bit of a busybody.*

**Chatterbox** – sb who talks a lot: *My little daughter is such a chatterbox! She never stops talking!*

**Clock-watcher** – sb who often looks at a clock to see what time it is because they are bored and want to stop working: *She's a typical clock-watcher. She's only interested in leaving work and going home.*

**Couch potato** – sb who spends a lot of time sitting at home watching TV: *After her husband retired, he became a real couch potato. He spends so much time watching television!*

**Crank** – sb who has unusual ideas and behaves strangely: *She's got extremely odd, eccentric, unconventional ideas and theories – she's a real crank.*

**Daredevil** – sb who does dangerous things for enjoyment and does not worry about the risk: *I'm afraid for my younger son. He's such a daredevil always taking dangerous risks!* [ср. «сорвиголова»]

**Day-dreamer** – he's always got his head in the clouds, always fantasizing

**Dutch courage** – courage inspired by drinking alcohol

**Double-Dutch:** If you talk double-Dutch it means you are totally incomprehensible. *I can't understand a word of it – it's double Dutch to me.* [ср. «китайская грамота»]

**Fare-dodger** – sb who avoids paying when they travel on public transport. [ср. «заяц»]

**French window/door** – a door that usually has glass panes and opens in the middle; it often leads out into a garden.

**Gatecrasher** – sb who visit other people without being invited: *The other day she turned up at our party without being invited. I didn't know she's such a gatecrasher.*

**Golden boy** – a very popular and successful man

**Good Samaritan** – sb who gives help to people in trouble

**High flyer** – an ambitious person who is very successful in their work or studies: *I'm sure he's got his eye on the top job and with the amount of work he does, he'll probably get it too. – Yes, he's definitely a high flyer.*

**(an) Indian summer** – a period of dry, warm weather in September. [ср. «бабье лето»]

**Irish stew** – a kind of dish made from meat, onions and potatoes.

**Jack Frost** – a way of describing frost to a person – used especially when talking to children

**Jack-of-all-trades** – sb who can do different types of work, but who often is not very skilled at any of them. [ср. «мастер на все руки»]



**Jack Robinson:** before you can say Jack Robinson – very quickly or suddenly.

**Jack the Lad** – a young person who enjoys drinking alcohol and going out with his male friends, and who thinks he is sexually attractive.

**Jay-walker** – sb who crosses the road without bothering to look at the traffic.

**Jekyll and Hyde** (= a person who seems to have a split personality being two completely different people, one good and one bad) [from the book *The Strange Case of Dr Jekyll and Mr Hyde* by Robert Luis Stevenson. Dr Jekyll changes from being a good person to being an evil person, Mr Hyde, by taking a special drug]: *I can't make him out really. Sometimes he seems so kind and helpful and yet at other times he'll be really unpleasant and aggressive. It's Jekyll and Hyde again.*

**Joe Bloggs** = all ordinary people and their thoughts, feelings, and situations: *I bet if you asked Joe Bloggs on the street what he thought about it, he'd say throw the bastards out of Parliament.*

**Killjoy** – sb who complains about other people enjoying themselves: *I can't stand our neighbor. Every time we have a party he complains about the noise. He even complains about children playing in the park. – What a killjoy!* [ср. «зануда»]

**Know-all** – sb who behaves as if they know everything: *He was definitely Mr Know-all telling people he knew quite a lot about modern art.* [ср. «всезнайка»]

**Layabout** – a lazy person who avoids work: *He's lazy and prefers not to work – what a layabout!*

**Litter-lout** – sb who drops rubbish everywhere and never puts it in the bin

**Black Maria** = a vehicle used by the police to carry prisoners [ср. «черный воронок»]

**Name-dropper** – sb who likes to mention all the famous and important people they've met.

**Nosy Parker** (=sb who interferes in other people's affairs): *I told her today that what I want I do in my spare time has nothing to do with her. She's a bit of a nosy Parker.* [ср. «любопытная Варвара»]

**Pain in the neck** – a very annoying person: *She's become a real nuisance recently. I can't stand her any longer. She's a real pain in the neck.* [ср. «головная боль»]

**Peter Pan** (= a man who never seems to grow up) [from the main character in the play *Peter Pan* by J. M. Barrie. He is a young boy who never grows up but lives in a magic place called NEVER-NEVER LAND and can fly]: *He wants to stay young, free and single even though he's in his forties. He looks half his age as well. He's a Peter Pan really, isn't he?*

**Queen Ann is dead** = to say nothing new [ср. «Америку открыл!»]

**Road hog** – sb who drives in a dangerous way: *What a road hog he is! Always driving carelessly! He's bound to cause a serious problem one day.* [ср. «лихач»]

**Rolling stone** – sb who can't settle down, but goes from job to job, place to place. [ср. «перекати-поле»]



**Scapegoat** – sb who is blamed for sth that is not their fault: *It wasn't really my fault, but they needed someone for the mess. So, as I was chairman of the committee, they chose me as a scapegoat.* [ср. «козел отпущения»]

**Scrooge** (= a mean person) [from the character of Ebenezer Scrooge in the story 'A Christmas Carol' by Charles Dickens, who is very mean and thinks that Christmas is a waste of time and money]: *He's such a Scrooge – he wouldn't spend a penny! / My landlord makes Scrooge look extravagant.* [ср. Плюшкин]

**Scrounger** – sb who get sth they want by asking someone for it instead of providing it themselves: *He's always asking for money and living off others. He's such a scrounger.* [ср. «халявщик»]

**Slave-driver** – sb who makes his employees work extremely hard [ср. «деспот»]

**Slob** – a lazy and untidy person

**Slow coach** – sb who is always behind the others in their work or studies

**Smart aleck** – sb who shows off their cleverness, or always has the right answer, in a way that is annoying

**Spendthrift** – an extravagant person who is very careless about money and spends more than they need to, even when they do not have a lot of it: *Do I save? You're joking. As soon as I get money I spend it. I'm a typical spendthrift.* [ср. «мот, транжира»]

**Sponger** – sb who gets food or money from other people without offering to pay: *He came out with us last night but didn't contribute anything to the cost of the meal or even buy anyone else a drink. What a sponger!* [ср. «халявщик»]

**Tear-away** – sb who is a bit wild, always getting into fights and other trouble: *His car was wrecked by a couple of young tearaways.* [ср. «сорвиголова»]

**Tomboy** – a girl who likes playing the same games as boys

**A doubting Thomas** – a person who refuses to believe something without having incontrovertible proof; a sceptic. [ср. «Фома неверующий»]

**Tough cookie** – sb who is clever but does not have much sympathy with other people's problems: *Some people say she's unfeeling but she's really good at running the business and making it profitable. – A bit of a tough cookie, then.*

**Uncle Sam** – the imaginary person who represents the US and its government

**Walter Mitty** – a person who fantasies about leading and exciting, adventurous life when it is in fact quite ordinary [from the main character in a story by James Thurber called 'The Secret Life of Walter Mitty'. He has a very ordinary life, but spends a lot of time imagining that he is a brave and important person living a dangerous and exciting life.]: *He was telling me the most amazing stories about his career as a professional stuntman. I don't believe a word of it – he's well known as a bit of a Walter Mitty.*

**Wannabe** – sb who wants to be famous for no reason: *Don't take her too seriously. She's just a wannabe.*

**Welsh dresser** – a type of sideboard with shelves above and drawers below

**Welsh rarebit/rabbit** – melted cheese on hot toast

**Wet blanket** – sb who seems to want to spoil other people's fun: *She's so boring and negative about everything, always preventing others from enjoying themselves. She's a real wet blanket.*

**Whizz kid** – a young person who is very skilled or successful at sth: *Though he's still young, but he's got a lot of modern ideas, energy and enthusiasm. I'd call him a whizz kid.*

**Wind-bag** – sb who talks too much: *She's such a wind-bag talking on and on about her ideas!*

## 4. COLLOQUIAL RESPONSES

In informal situations, we often use natural responses, which can be highly colloquial.  
*You mustn't tell a soul. – My lips are sealed.*

*He's a very odd chap. – It takes all sorts.*

In conversations between very close friends, we sometimes use very casual, ironic or even rude responses.

*Can you lend me \$100? – You must be joking.*

*Where were you last night? – Mind your own business.*

**Ex.54. For each spoken item on the left find the most natural response on the right.**

## A

1. I've got a coin.	a. No, it's my round.
2. Can I have some more meat?	b. Let's toss for it.
3. I'll buy the drinks.	c. Cheers!
4. Cup of tea?	d. OK. You toss, I'll call. Tails!
5. How shall we decide?	e. I could do with one.
6. Cheers!	f. Help yourself.
7. Sorry I can't help you.	g. If you don't mind taking pot luck.
8. I've got some news.	h. The more the merrier.
9. Can I bring a friend to your party?	i. I'm all ears.
10. Can I come to lunch?	j. OK. Thanks all the same.

## B

1. Where shall I put my case?	a. Oh, it's on the tip of my tongue.
2. Bobby's in trouble at school.	b. Let me sleep on it.
3. I'm afraid this is the only job I can offer you.	c. Yes, by the skin of my teeth.
4. We need a decision soon.	d. Serves you right.
5. Do you know what it's called?	e. I'm keeping my fingers crossed.
6. Can I use your phone?	f. Well, boys will be boys.
7. Did you catch the train?	g. Every little helps.
8. I've eaten too much. I feel ill.	h. Be my guest.
9. I hope the weather's good for our trip tomorrow.	i. Dump anywhere.
10. Sorry I can't make a bigger donation.	j. Beggars can't be choosers.

### Mixed Practice

#### Ex.55. Choose the right colour in the idioms that follow.

1. We decided to celebrate by going out and painting the town **red/blue/black**.
2. After sunbathing for two hours every day, Jane was as **red/yellow/brown** as a berry.
3. She was absolutely **white/green/blue** with envy when I won a trip to Athens.
4. The news of their marriage came as a bolt from the **red/blue/silver**.
5. My mother has got **gold/silver/green** fingers – everything she plants in the garden grows well.
6. Sometimes it is better to tell a **black/white/yellow** lie than to hurt someone's feelings.
7. You can argue with me until you're **red/brown/blue** in the face.
8. When the visitors from Japan arrived, the company gave them the **gold/red/white** carpet treatment.
9. Are you afraid to fight? You're not **white/yellow/blue**, are you? Come on, don't be a coward!
10. The **white/blue/brown-collar** workers received a rise, but the workers on the shop floor were told they had to wait.
11. When the theatre first opened it was widely regarded as a **white/pink/green** elephant.
12. The kids were tickled **pink/red/blue**.
13. They fell deeper and deeper into the **black/brown/red** and then went bankrupt.
14. I wanted to apply for a visa, but a friend told me there is so much **black/white/red** tape, so I've decided to forget it.
15. Scientists say that **red/yellow/blue-blood** children are no more intelligent than others.
16. The manager's reference to the forthcoming sales conference was a **red/blue/yellow** herring. He just wanted to get off the subject of the month's poor sales figures.

#### Ex.56. Fill in the missing words in the sentences below.

1. Her sharp \_\_\_\_\_ will get her into trouble one day.
2. Put your \_\_\_\_\_ up, switch on the TV and enjoy life!
3. If you play a musical instrument by \_\_\_\_\_, it means you play it without using printed music – you play it from memory.
4. To live from hand to \_\_\_\_\_ means that you just live from day to day, spending all your money as soon as you get it.
5. What's this supposed to mean? I can't make \_\_\_\_\_ or tail of it.
6. What's wrong with Sue? I said hello to her but she gave me the cold \_\_\_\_\_.

7. Don't ask James to do anything practical; he's all \_\_\_\_\_ and thumbs.
8. If you want a flat in the centre of the city you have to pay through the \_\_\_\_\_ for it.
9. I caught the last train by the skin of my \_\_\_\_\_.
10. He's not being serious. He's speaking with his \_\_\_\_\_ in his cheek.
11. We're off to a \_\_\_\_\_ party tonight – David's getting married on Saturday.
12. We were hoping to keep our engagement a secret, but my mother let the \_\_\_\_\_ out of the bag.
13. I always get \_\_\_\_\_ in my stomach before the interview.
14. He thought he was a \_\_\_\_\_, because everybody blamed him for other people's mistakes.
15. As she was the breadwinner, everyone considered her to be the real \_\_\_\_\_ of the family.

**Ex.57. Replace the words in brackets in the following sentences with a suitable colloquial expression.**

1. You're \_\_\_\_\_ (*wasting time*) trying to make Mike change his mind!
2. We were hoping to keep our engagement a secret, but my friend \_\_\_\_\_ (*told everyone about it*).
3. I must say that I found it hard to \_\_\_\_\_ (*remain silent*) when he started saying all those horrible things about foreigners.
4. You didn't think I was being serious, did you, Brian! It was a joke! I was \_\_\_\_\_ (*joking*).
5. I always get \_\_\_\_\_ (*feel nervous*) before an interview.
6. We all found it difficult to keep \_\_\_\_\_ (*not to laugh*) when we noticed that our teacher had forgotten to do up the zip on his trousers.
7. I thought she was the new secretary, but I began to \_\_\_\_\_ (*become suspicious*) when I found her going through coat pockets in the cloakroom.
8. They used Harry as a \_\_\_\_\_ (*sb who is used for experiments*) to test how effective their new food additives were.
9. It's strange that Jim doesn't have any friends among his classmates. – But it's natural, he's a real \_\_\_\_\_ (*unfriendly*).
10. I don't think their new project will \_\_\_\_\_ (*produce a positive result*).
11. I won't go to the concert of classical music – it's not really \_\_\_\_\_ (*what I like*).
12. You shouldn't \_\_\_\_\_ (*ignore*) what your son is doing in his spare time.
13. His awful behaviour really \_\_\_\_\_ (*infuriates me*).
14. Please don't \_\_\_\_\_ (*make him look stupid*) – he may take it to heart and get offended.
15. She's constantly lying, so you should take her words \_\_\_\_\_ (*not completely believe her*).

**Ex.58. Complete each of these idioms.**

1. Big Joe is quite harmless really, although he looks tough. He wouldn't \_\_\_\_ a \_\_\_\_.
2. Harry never seems to want to go out with other people. He's a bit of a \_\_\_\_.
3. "How did you know I was getting married?" – "A \_\_\_\_ me."
4. One look at those cakes makes my \_\_\_\_.
5. He wants to \_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_: he wants a well-paid secure job, but he doesn't want to work hard.
6. The police played an elaborate game of \_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_ to trap them.
7. "I don't know how I'm going to cope with this difficult problem". — "Oh, it's as \_\_\_\_, you just have to start.
8. What's that you say? You want to borrow some money. You haven't \_\_\_\_?
9. Her new house is extremely small – there's not enough \_\_\_\_.
10. On hearing the news she felt extremely nervous and restless, like a on \_\_\_\_.
11. He's such a treacherous and deceitful man – a real \_\_\_\_.
12. Can I have some water, please. I've got a \_\_\_\_ in \_\_\_\_, and I'm going to speak at the conference.
13. I'm sure this incident is not so bad, in fact, I do believe that every \_\_\_\_ has a \_\_\_\_.
14. They both are business-like, energetic and full of beans. In fact, birds \_\_\_\_.
15. What's wrong with you today? You're like a \_\_\_\_ with \_\_\_\_.
16. She's always been at the top of her class. She's definitely a \_\_\_\_.
17. He can do all sorts of things: carpeting, mending, fixing and so on. He's a real \_\_\_\_.
18. He's always boasting of knowing everything about culture and art – a typical \_\_\_\_.
19. Everybody considered the President to be a \_\_\_\_ as he couldn't cope with either national or international problems of the country.
20. The bus stop was wrecked by a group of young \_\_\_\_.

**Ex.59. For each item on the left, find the most natural response on the right.**

1. People say you're very generous.	a. I'm afraid I haven't a clue.
2. I thought you were going to accept the offer.	b. Oh, this is on me.
3. Do you know where the cinema is?	c. That'll be the day.
4. I don't think I can afford this restaurant. It looks a bit expensive.	d. Care for a spin?
5. I've left our tickets at home!	e. A little bird told me.
6. I'll pay you back soon.	f. Flattery will get you nowhere.
7. How did you know I was going out with Jane?	g. Well, it can't be helped.
8. I like your new car.	h. I'm having second thoughts.

## 5. MINI TOPICS

### 5.1. EXPRESSING FEELINGS

#### 5.1.1. Argument

**Ex.60. Put each of the words from the box in its correct place in the passage below.**

disagreement   resentment   friction   jealous   aggressive   nag   row  
troublemaker

I've always had a feeling of (1) \_\_\_\_\_ towards my older brother, John, because he always received more attention from our parents. There has always been (2) \_\_\_\_\_ between us. And now that I'm more successful than he is in my job, he is (3) \_\_\_\_\_ of me. We've never actually had a (4) \_\_\_\_\_, just the occasional (5) \_\_\_\_\_, but we've never got on well. And his wife likes to make things worse. She's a real (6) \_\_\_\_\_, a nasty, argumentative, quarrelsome, (7) \_\_\_\_\_ woman. I've heard her (8) \_\_\_\_\_ John continually to get a better job, a bigger house, a nicer car.

#### 5.1.2. Sadness

**Ex.61. Instructions as above.**

sob   miss   recover   grief   comfort   sleepless   tears  
heartbroken   withdrawn

When Susan's cat was killed by a car she burst into (1) \_\_\_\_\_ and began to (2) \_\_\_\_\_ so loudly that the neighbours next door heard her. She was (3) \_\_\_\_\_ by the (4) \_\_\_\_\_. Her mother tried to (5) \_\_\_\_\_ her but Susan's (6) \_\_\_\_\_ was so great that it was three

days (and three (7) \_\_\_\_\_ nights) before she began to (8) \_\_\_\_\_ enough to eat normally. Even then she talked to no one and was silent and (9) \_\_\_\_\_ for weeks. I think she'll always (10) \_\_\_\_\_ her pet.

### 5.1.3. Nervousness

#### Ex.62. Instructions as above.

blush tremble stammer sweat faint shy tongue-tied nerves  
embarrassment tranquillizer

I have to tell you that my (1) \_\_\_\_\_ aren't very good. Last week I went for a job interview and my hands began to (2) \_\_\_\_\_, my palms started to (3) \_\_\_\_\_ and my face was red because I always (4) \_\_\_\_\_ with (5) \_\_\_\_\_ on these occasions. I've always been very (6) \_\_\_\_\_ with other people. When I was asked questions I was completely (7) \_\_\_\_\_ and I could only (8) \_\_\_\_\_. I felt (9) \_\_\_\_\_ and wished I had a (10) \_\_\_\_\_ to calm me down. I didn't get the job. A pity. I would like to have been a television newsreader.



# PART III. IMPROVE YOUR GRAMMAR

## 1. ARTICLES

### 1.1. ZERO ARTICLE

#### 1.1.1

Explanations	Examples
With uncountables and abstract or general ideas, and plurals (not previously mentioned)	<i>I like orange juice. Give peace a chance. I hate spiders.</i>

#### 1.1.2

With most proper names	<i>We live in France. Go down Regent Street then turn left. I'll see you in January.</i>
------------------------	--

#### 1.1.3

With unique jobs or roles (definite article is also possible)	<i>Michael is (the) chairman of the company.</i>
---	--

#### 1.1.4

With prepositions of place, when the place plays a special role	<i>Sally is in prison (= she is a prisoner). But: Sally is in the prison (= a visitor to the building).</i>
---	---

#### 1.1.5

With general means of transport (except when <i>in</i> or <i>on</i> is used)	<i>We went there by car. But: We went there in a car/on a bus.</i>
--	--

#### 1.1.6

With names of meals when they refer to routine times	<i>It's time for lunch. What's for dinner? But: It was a most enjoyable dinner.</i>
--	---

### 1.2. DEFINITE ARTICLE

#### 1.2.1

Previously mentioned items	<i>There is a bedroom and a living room. <b>The</b> bedroom is large.</i>
----------------------------	---

#### 1.2.2

Single items, whose reference is clear	<i>Can you pass <b>the</b> salt? What happened after <b>the</b> war?</i>
--	--

## 1.2.3

Unique objects	<i><b>The</b> moon is full tonight.</i>
----------------	---

## 1.2.4

Items which are followed by a descriptive phrase, which makes them definite	<i>This is <b>the</b> man I told you about. <b>The</b> Tower of London is in the City.</i>
---	--

## 1.2.5

National groups	<i><b>The</b> British drink far too much tea.</i>
-----------------	---

## 1.2.6

Classes of people	<i><b>The</b> rich get richer and <b>the</b> poor get poorer.</i>
-------------------	---

## 1.2.7

Individual items which represent a class	<i><b>The</b> lion is fast disappearing.</i>
--	--

## 1.2.8

Names of musical instruments and ability to play	<i>I can't play <b>the</b> piano but I can play <b>the</b> guitar.</i>
--	--

## 1.2.9

Some geographical names: plural countries, or where the name contains a noun; names of rivers, lakes, seas and oceans, and mountains and regions	<i><b>the</b> Netherlands; <b>the</b> People's Republic of China; <b>the</b> Thames flows into <b>the</b> North Sea; <b>the</b> Arctic.</i>
--	---

## 1.2.10

<i>The</i> may be part of the title, and so is capitalised. Titles of books and films etc do not have <i>the</i> unless there is post-modification	<i><b>the</b> Independen<b>ce</b>; <b>the</b> Sunday Times; <b>the</b> Phantom of the Opera</i>
--	---

## 1.2.11

Names of pubs, restaurants and hotels	<i><b>the</b> Garden House Hotel; <b>the</b> Lane Horse</i>
---------------------------------------	---

## 1.2.12

Superlatives, ordinals, <i>the same</i> , <i>the only</i>	<i>This is <b>the</b> best. You are <b>the</b> first. This is <b>the only</b> one.</i>
---	--

## 1.3. INDEFINITE ARTICLE

## 1.3.1

Describing jobs	<i>John is <b>a</b> lorry driver.</i>
-----------------	---------------------------------------

## 1.3.2

With singular fractions, group numbers and large numbers	<i>one and <b>a</b> half kilos; <b>a</b> dozen eggs; <b>a</b> hundred envelopes</i>
--	---

## 1.3.3

Meaning <i>per</i>	<i>He was doing ninety miles <b>an</b> hour. She earns \$1000 <b>a</b> week.</i>
--------------------	--

## 1.3.4

Unknown people	<i>A Mr Jones called while you were out.</i>
----------------	--

## 1.3.5.

Meaning can change, depending on what kind of article is used:  
*Helen is **at the school**.* (At the building, we don't know why.)  
*Helen is **at school**.* (She is a student or a teacher.)

Many uses of the articles are idiomatic, and should be learned as part of a phrase.  
*It rings **a/the** bell. It's **a** piece of cake. As old as **the** hills.  
**The** proof of **the** pudding is in **the** eating.*

## Mixed Practice

## Ex.1. Choose the most suitable phrase underlined.

1. Is this a student/the student you told me about?
2. This is the only cinema/an only cinema in the area.
3. Here is a thousand pounds/the thousand pounds I owe you.
4. Are you going to church/the church on Sunday?
5. Do you have a milk jug/milk jug?
6. The Prime Minister/Prime Minister will give a speech this afternoon.
7. The computer/Computer has already changed our lives dramatically.
8. I'm going to the British Museum/British Museum next Tuesday.
9. The gardener was the last person/last person I suspected.

10. Where are scissors/the scissors you borrowed last week?
11. Why don't we go to the park in the car/by the car?
12. Too much rubbish is being dumped in the sea/sea.
13. Let's go on holiday to Greek Islands/the Greek Islands.
14. This is exactly a job/the job I'm looking for.
15. Of all these cars, I think I prefer Japanese one/the Japanese one.
16. Sally spent six months out of work/the work.
17. Most people think that a good job/good job is an important part of life.
18. I feel that a hundred miles/hundred miles an hour is too fast even on a motorway.
19. I didn't know that the Tower /Tower of London was built by William the Conqueror.
20. Some people say that English/the English are difficult to get to know at first.

**Ex.2. Put a/an or the in each space, or leave the space blank.**

1. We went by \_\_\_ train to \_\_\_ west of England.
2. \_\_\_ people who live in \_\_\_ Netherlands are called \_\_\_ Dutch.
3. \_\_\_ judge sent \_\_\_ criminal to \_\_\_ prison for ten years.
4. \_\_\_ Columbus was one of \_\_\_ first people to cross \_\_\_ Atlantic.
5. As \_\_\_ captain of \_\_\_ ship, I have \_\_\_ complete authority.
6. David learned to play \_\_\_ violin when he was at \_\_\_ university.
7. \_\_\_ Trafalgar Square is near \_\_\_ Charing Cross Station.
8. Did you read \_\_\_ book I lent you \_\_\_ last week?
9. We'll put up \_\_\_ shelves and then go to \_\_\_ pub for \_\_\_ drink.
10. Is that \_\_\_ present Bob gave you for \_\_\_ Christmas?
11. Neil Armstrong made \_\_\_ first footprint on \_\_\_ moon.
12. There was \_\_\_ accident yesterday at \_\_\_ corner of \_\_\_ street.
13. I need \_\_\_ time to think about \_\_\_ offer you made me.
14. \_\_\_ recipe for \_\_\_ success is \_\_\_ hard work.
15. \_\_\_ people who live in \_\_\_ glass houses shouldn't throw \_\_\_ stones.
16. \_\_\_ worst part of \_\_\_ living in a caravan is \_\_\_ lack of space.
17. \_\_\_ book you ordered \_\_\_ last week is now in \_\_\_ stock.
18. \_\_\_ dancing is \_\_\_ more interesting activity than \_\_\_ cleaning the house.
19. \_\_\_ people we met on \_\_\_ holiday in \_\_\_ north of England sent us \_\_\_ postcard.
20. \_\_\_ little knowledge is \_\_\_ dangerous thing.
21. \_\_\_ only problem here is \_\_\_ weather.
22. I saw \_\_\_ film of \_\_\_ Hamlet on \_\_\_ television.
23. \_\_\_ faster you drive, \_\_\_ more dangerous it is.
24. I'm going to tell \_\_\_ truth and nothing but \_\_\_ truth.
25. Peter is at \_\_\_ university. He's \_\_\_ second-year student.
26. He's going to stand for \_\_\_ Parliament at \_\_\_ next election.

27. \_\_\_ most main roads in this part of \_\_\_ country follow \_\_\_ line of \_\_\_ roads built by \_\_\_ Romans.
28. We spent \_\_\_ pleasant evening having \_\_\_ drink at \_\_\_ Robin Hood.
29. At \_\_\_ end of \_\_\_ busy day, \_\_\_ sleep is \_\_\_ best tonic.
30. I'm staying in \_\_\_ Hilton so you can leave me \_\_\_ message.

## 2. ADJECTIVE OR ADVERB?

### 2.1

We usually add **-ly** to the adjectives to form adverbs: *serious – seriously, careful – carefully*.

Adverbs usually describe verbs, adjectives, other adverbs or sentences.

### 2.2

The following words end in **-ly**, but they are adjectives: *elderly, friendly, likely, lively, lonely, silly, ugly, lovely etc.* Adjectives describe nouns.

### 2.3

Some adverbs have the same form as adjectives: *fast, hard, close, fine, dead, low, deep, early, late, near, right, wrong, pretty, short, straight, hourly, daily, weekly monthly, yearly*.

Adjective	Adverb
<p>The lake is <b>deep</b>.</p> <p>These biscuits are very <b>hard</b>.</p> <p>'Eve' is a <b>weekly</b> magazine.</p>	<p>They went <b>deep</b> into the forest.</p> <p>He tried <b>hard</b> in order to succeed.</p> <p>It comes out <b>weekly</b>.</p>

### Ex.3. Decide if each underlined word is an adjective or an adverb.

- The new building is rather ugly.
- I'd like to arrive early if I can.
- I haven't seen you for a long time.
- Why are you wearing that silly hat?
- Very young children travel free.
- The temperature is quite high today.
- We nearly missed the bus this morning.
- Do you have to play that music so loud?
- He visits his parents monthly.
- They went straight to the hotel after their plane landed.

## 2.4

In other cases, the adverb may have two forms: *late* – *lately*. There is usually a difference in meaning or use.

Adverb/ Meaning	Example
<b>Direct</b> = without stopping <b>Directly</b> = immediately, very soon	We flew <b>direct</b> from London to Boston. Don't go. I'll be with you <b>directly</b> .
<b>Late</b> = not on time, not early <b>Lately</b> = recently	He came <b>late</b> for the meeting. He hasn't been feeling well <b>lately</b> .
<b>Deep</b> = a long way down <b>Deeply</b> = very, extremely	We explored <b>deep</b> into the jungle. I'm <b>deeply</b> ashamed of my behaviour.
<b>Free</b> = without payment <b>Freely</b> = without limit or restriction	The hotel guests can use the parking <b>free</b> . The animals in this park can roam <b>freely</b> .
<b>High</b> = to a great height <b>Highly</b> = extremely, very	The kite flew <b>high</b> in the sky. He is a <b>highly</b> respected doctor.
<b>Hard</b> = with a lot of effort <b>Hardly</b> * = scarcely, almost not	He is working <b>hard</b> these days. They <b>hardly</b> go anywhere now.
<b>Wide</b> = direct meaning <b>Widely</b> = distance/separation	The door was <b>wide</b> open. She is <b>widely</b> known.
<b>Pretty</b> = rather <b>Prettily</b> = in a pretty way	It's <b>pretty</b> hard to do this work. She is dressed <b>prettily</b> .
<b>Sharp</b> = punctually <b>Sharply</b> = crossly	They came at 6 o'clock <b>sharp</b> . She looked at him <b>sharply</b> .
<b>Most</b> = the superlative of <i>much</i> ; very <b>Mostly</b> = mainly	This is the <b>most</b> exciting place I've been to. My friends are <b>mostly</b> non-smokers.

\*Note: **hardly** has a negative meaning and is often used with: any, anyone, anywhere, anything and ever.

## Ex.4. Choose the right word.

## A

1. This material is high/highly radioactive.
2. They sell cheap/cheaply things there.
3. I near/nearly fell asleep in the meeting.
4. The animals are allowed to wander free/freely in this safari park.
5. The plane flew high/highly above the clouds.
6. He was just/justly punished.
7. She travelled wide/widely.
8. That suits me fine/finely.
9. I'm sorry, I won't join you. I'm dead/deadly tired.
10. Try to do it right/rightly this time.

11. She was deep/deeply in love with her new boy friend.
12. He lifted the poster high/highly over his head.
13. Wait a little. I'll join you direct/directly.
14. We got into the concert free/freely.
15. The bridesmaids were pretty/prettily dressed in pink.

### B

1. The chances are \_\_\_\_\_. This is a \_\_\_\_\_ complex law. (high, highly)
2. He was a tall man with \_\_\_\_\_ shoulders. The child yawned \_\_\_\_\_. (wide, widely)
3. We have a very \_\_\_\_\_ opinion of you. The review is \_\_\_\_\_ critical. (high, highly)
4. Her books sell \_\_\_\_\_. The gap between the poor and the rich is very \_\_\_\_\_. (wide, widely)
5. They are \_\_\_\_\_ educated people. This is \_\_\_\_\_ fashion. (high, highly)
6. She opened her eyes \_\_\_\_\_ and stared. These books are \_\_\_\_\_ know (wide, widely)
7. The students spoke \_\_\_\_\_ of the teacher. He lives to very \_\_\_\_\_ standards. (high, highly)
8. They are \_\_\_\_\_ religious people. The river was three metres \_\_\_\_\_. (deep, deeply)
9. The Marathon runner was breathing \_\_\_\_\_. We \_\_\_\_\_ know each other. (hard, hardly)
10. The crowd moved more \_\_\_\_\_ around him. Nancy is a \_\_\_\_\_ relative of Bess's (close, closely)
11. She loved her husband \_\_\_\_\_. They dug \_\_\_\_\_ down into the earth. (deep, deeply)
12. We had a \_\_\_\_\_ talk. He told me \_\_\_\_\_ what to do. (short, shortly)

### 3. PARTICIPLE I OR PARTICIPLE II?

Participle I	Participle II
<i>The book is very <b>interesting</b>.</i>	<i>Mike is very <b>interested</b> in UFOs.</i>
The word <b>interesting</b> tells us what the book does to sb – it interests them. A book can be <i>interesting, boring, exciting or amusing</i> .	The word <b>interested</b> tells us how Mike feels. A person can feel <i>interested, excited or amused</i> , for example.

#### Ex.5. Form the correct Participle (I or II) out of the verbs in brackets.

1. The passengers were \_\_\_\_\_ (annoy) about the delay.
2. I went to the party but I felt \_\_\_\_\_ (bore).
3. I got very \_\_\_\_\_ (confuse) trying to make sense of the instructions.
4. It was very \_\_\_\_\_ (disappoint) not to get the job.
5. For one \_\_\_\_\_ (terrify) moment I thought I was going to fall.
6. I didn't enjoy the party. It was \_\_\_\_\_ (bore).
7. I just don't understand. I find the whole thing rather \_\_\_\_\_ (puzzle).
8. Lying in a hot bath is \_\_\_\_\_ (relax).

9. I think the way she behaved was quite \_\_\_\_\_ (shock).
10. When I got onto the roof, I felt \_\_\_\_\_ (frighten).
11. The test results were \_\_\_\_\_ (surprise).
12. I thought the programme on wildlife was \_\_\_\_\_ (fascinate).
13. Going for a jog with Mike is \_\_\_\_\_ (exhaust).
14. What \_\_\_\_\_ (thrill) news this is! Congratulations!
15. The weather makes me so \_\_\_\_\_ (depress).
16. We were \_\_\_\_\_ (amuse) at Tom's story.
17. We were all \_\_\_\_\_ (fascinate) by the spectacular sight of the city at night.
18. She didn't seem \_\_\_\_\_ (disappoint) at all by her failure at the exam.
19. I couldn't feel \_\_\_\_\_ (relax) for a single moment.
20. Nobody was \_\_\_\_\_ (surprise) by her strange behaviour at the party.

## 4. RELATIVE CLAUSES

### 4.1. DEFINING AND NON-DEFINING RELATIVE CLAUSES

#### 4.1.1

defining clause	non-defining clause
A defining clause specifies which person or thing we mean. It cannot be separated from the person or thing it describes: <i>By 5 pm, there was only one painting <b>which</b> hadn't been sold.</i>	A non-defining clause contains extra information. In writing it is separated by commas, and in speech is usually indicated by intonation: <i>By 5 pm, <b>which</b> was almost closing time, nearly all the paintings had been sold.</i>

#### 4.1.2

**Which** and **that** are alternatives in a defining clause, although **which** is more formal: *By 5 pm, there was only one painting **that** hadn't been sold.*

**That** is not normally used to introduce a non-defining clause.  
*The train, **which** was already an hour late, broke down again.*

**That** is often used instead of **who** in everyday speech in defining clauses.  
*Do you know the girl **that** lives next door?*

#### 4.1.3. When and where

defining clause	non-defining clause
<i>There is hardly a moment <b>when</b> I don't think of you, Sophia.</i> <i>This is the street <b>where</b> I live.</i>	<i>Come back at 7, <b>when</b> I won't be busy.</i> <i>I stopped in Maidstone, <b>where</b> my sister owns a shop.</i>



## 4.1.4

A non-defining clause can comment on the whole situation described in the main clause:  
*There was nobody left on the train, **which made me suspicious.***  
*I watched the play until the end of the first act, **at which point** I felt I had seen enough.*  
*A warning 'Overheat' may come on, **in which case** turn off the appliance at once.*

## 4.1.5. Whose

**Whose** is used in defining clauses to show possession:  
*I gave a lift to a friend **whose** car had broken down.*  
*Our guide was a young man **whose** English was very good.*

## 4.1.6. Whatever, whoever, whichever

These words can be used to start clauses.  
*You can rely on Helen to do **whatever she can.***  
***Whoever arrives first** can turn on the heating.*

## Mixed Practice

**Ex.6. Read these sentences. What are the differences in meaning between them?**

1. I like going to Greek islands which have wonderful beaches.
2. I like going to Greek islands, which have wonderful beaches.
3. Molly's sister who lives in the USA has invited her to stay.
4. Molly's sister, who lives in the USA, has invited her to stay.
5. The hotel rooms which have a sea view are quite expensive.
6. The hotel rooms, which have a sea view, are quite expensive.

**Ex.7. Join these sentences together using *who (whom)* or *which*.**

1. We went round the city with a guide. I couldn't understand her at all.
2. Last year we stayed in a hotel. A friend of ours had recommended it.
3. I've got a villa. You can use it whenever you like.
4. I'll give you the number of a travel agent. I know him.
5. I've bought a guide book. It has a list of good restaurants.
6. We went on an excursion. It lasted all day.

**Ex.8. Choose the most suitable words underlined.**

1. What was the name of the person that/which bought your old car?
2. All the doors were open, which/that seemed rather odd.
3. Whatever/Whichever you do, don't press this red button.
4. This is Maria who/whom is taking over my job when I leave.
5. On the Sunday, which/that was my birthday, we went out for a meal.
6. It was the kind of accident for which/that nobody was really to blame.
7. Kate was late yesterday, that/which was unusual for her.
8. I don't know who/whoever told you that, but they were wrong.
9. The first time I saw you was that/when you answered the door.
10. I've just spoken to Jessica, who/that sends you her love.

**Ex.9. Put one suitable word in each space. In some cases, more than one variant is possible.**

1. \_\_\_ leaves last, should turn off the lights.
2. At 6, \_\_\_ was an hour before the plane was due, thick fog descended.
3. Mrs Brown was the first owner \_\_\_ dog won three prizes in the same show.
4. I waited for him until 6.30, at \_\_\_ point I gave up.
5. Everyone \_\_\_ understands this book is cleverer than I am.
6. It's time \_\_\_ most people are on bed.
7. I'll believe \_\_\_ you say.
8. \_\_\_ you come back let me know.
9. Jane was the first person \_\_\_ advice I asked for.
10. There is only one Greek island \_\_\_ I haven't visited.
11. The letter \_\_\_ arrived this morning contained bad news.
12. It's the long winters here \_\_\_ really depress most people.
13. He was the first man \_\_\_ landed on the moon.
14. Harry isn't the kind of person \_\_\_ gets on with everyone.
15. In the whole book there was only one chapter \_\_\_ interested me.

## PART IV. GET READY FOR THE CONTEST

### 1. CLOZE (FILLING IN THE GAPS)

#### 1.1. OPEN CLOZE

**Ex.1.** For questions 1–15, read the text below and think of the word which best fits each space. Use only *one* word.

#### A. Radio, Television and the Film Industry

Cinema and television are generally thought (1) \_\_\_\_\_ as being distinct, whether as industrial practices or as viewing experiences. (2) \_\_\_\_\_ fact, the two have been quite closely interwoven, ever (3) \_\_\_\_\_ television first emerged (4) \_\_\_\_\_ a possible rival to the cinema (5) \_\_\_\_\_ an industrial scale. This was particularly true in the United States, (6) \_\_\_\_\_ a crossover between radio and cinema interests began in the 1920s, extending to television with the start of commercial broadcasting in 1939. In European countries, where broadcasting was in the hands of state monopolies, they remained separate for longer, (7) \_\_\_\_\_ but since the 1950s, there has been a growing convergence at all levels. By the 1980s, with the advent of large-screen television on the one (8) \_\_\_\_\_ and home video on the other, all the distinctions had come blurred.

Before television, in the United States, broadcasting developed as a system of privately-owned, commercial stations, tied together by two great networks and ineffectively regulated by the federal government. The Hollywood Studios were the (9) \_\_\_\_\_ to propose an alternative programming structure (10) \_\_\_\_\_ would have supported broadcasting from box-office profits. Paramount and MGM attempted to initiate (11) \_\_\_\_\_ own film-based radio networks in the late 1920s, using film talent under contract to provide entertainment with publicity value in promoting films. (12) \_\_\_\_\_, a combination of exhibitors' objections, together (13) \_\_\_\_\_ an inability to obtain necessary connecting land lines, blocked these efforts. In desperation, the studios turned (14) \_\_\_\_\_ station ownership and the advertising agencies and sponsors who produced the bulk of radio programming in the 1930s and 1940s. Hollywood stars and properties figured large in radio's golden age Paramount purchased an interest in CBS\* in 1928, which it was forced to surrender (15) \_\_\_\_\_ financial pressure in 1932.

---

\*Columbia Broadcasting System.

#### B

I'm just beginning to (1) \_\_\_\_\_ up to the fact that I'm no longer as young as I used to be. Of course, I'd (2) \_\_\_\_\_ for some time that my birthday seemed to come (3) \_\_\_\_\_ rather

quickly and that I'd put on quite a bit of (4) \_\_\_\_\_ – especially round the waist. But I really didn't think these things were (5) \_\_\_\_\_ with age – I simply put them down to the increased pace of life plus (6) \_\_\_\_\_ of exercise. In fact, I was (7) \_\_\_\_\_ that I could still easily pass for thirty-four or thirty-five – it was just a question of (8) \_\_\_\_\_ in my stomach and wearing the right sort of clothes. After all, I'd been brought up a firm believer in the (9) \_\_\_\_\_ 'You're as old as you feel' and as far as I was (10) \_\_\_\_\_ I didn't feel a day over thirty.

So it came as quite a shock the other day when, just as I'd got on a bus on my way home from work, a young lady (11) \_\_\_\_\_ me her seat. I mean, I could understand her giving up her seat to an old-age pensioner, but why me? Unless ... No, I (12) \_\_\_\_\_ to believe the other alternative.

'It's all right, thank you. I'm getting off soon,' I replied, forcing a smile, at the same time trying hard to convince myself that her (13) \_\_\_\_\_ was some sort of protest for 'Women's Lib'. All the same, it took me a few days to get over the incident and I found myself continually scrutinising my face in mirrors, trying hard to convince myself that the wrinkles around my eyes and on my forehead were not that (14) \_\_\_\_\_ – not from a distance anyway. My wife was very sympathetic and kept on trying to (15) \_\_\_\_\_ my ego with such encouraging remarks as: 'Of course you're not old, darling. You don't look a day over forty. Besides, grey hair makes you look distinguished.'

That weekend, in a desperate (16) \_\_\_\_\_ to persuade myself that there was still lots of (17) \_\_\_\_\_ left in me yet, I (18) \_\_\_\_\_ my wife into going to the dance hall we used to go to just before we got married. Unfortunately, the last time we had been there was more than twenty years ago, so I didn't find out until it was too late – until we were (19) \_\_\_\_\_ inside the place – that it had been (20) \_\_\_\_\_ into as discotheque. There couldn't have been anyone there over the age of twenty! To say that we stood out would be something of an (21) \_\_\_\_\_. As for fox-trotting to blaring rock music, well, that was quite out of the (22) \_\_\_\_\_. So we left rather quickly and spent the evening in the local pub instead.

I went to sleep that night feeling older and more depressed than (23) \_\_\_\_\_.

## 1.2. GAPPED SENTENCES

**Ex.2. For questions 1–20, think of *one word only* which can be used appropriately in all three sentences.**

1. It turns out that the politician \_\_\_\_\_ a double life.

Inefficiency on the part of rail staff \_\_\_\_\_ to the crash outside the station.

The path \_\_\_\_\_ from the station to the valley below.

2. The government's decision \_\_\_\_\_ to be disastrous for the educational system.

They never actually \_\_\_\_\_ that the accused was guilty of the crime.

Everyone said William would never make it to university but he \_\_\_\_\_ them all wrong.

3. The police \_\_\_\_\_ an appeal for witnesses to the murder.

Do you know where this passport was \_\_\_\_\_?

The publishers \_\_\_\_\_ the most recent edition of this dictionary last month.

4. The hot weather may just \_\_\_\_\_ us to head for the coast.

Don't \_\_\_\_\_ fate by travelling on Friday the 13th!

Nothing would \_\_\_\_\_ me to go on a camping holiday.

5. Don't put the \_\_\_\_\_ on me for what happened?

Where does the \_\_\_\_\_ for this tragedy lie?

We are prepared to accept some degree of \_\_\_\_\_ as regards the condition of the National Health Service.

6. Unpacking the enormous suitcases was a slow \_\_\_\_\_.

The strikers are in the \_\_\_\_\_ of organising talks with the management.

By a \_\_\_\_\_ of elimination, I worked out which street the house must be in.

7. Michael Jackson brought out a new \_\_\_\_\_ called 'Hopeless love'.

It's difficult for anyone with criminal \_\_\_\_\_ to get a job.

The police are keeping a written \_\_\_\_\_ of all cars which enter the area.

8. We were very pleased with Susan's effort – she \_\_\_\_\_ herself very well to the task in hand.

Actually, the comment I have just made to Ron \_\_\_\_\_ equally to everybody in this room.

I really hope my sister \_\_\_\_\_ for the job, she'd be so good at it.

9. The entire workforce at Ford downed tools today, in \_\_\_\_\_ of two sacked colleagues.

I'll come along to your speech, if you like, and give you some moral \_\_\_\_\_.

If you need any help, put your hand up and I or Mrs Jackson, the \_\_\_\_\_ teacher, will come to you.

10. She showed great \_\_\_\_\_ of my mind and led her children calmly downstairs to safety.

Like all great opera singers, Pavarotti has an imposing \_\_\_\_\_.

There was a huge police \_\_\_\_\_ at the football match.

11. His socks don't \_\_\_\_\_ – one is red and the other is blue.

For every outfit, Diana had a handbag and shoes to \_\_\_\_\_.

The police questioned both suspects and so far their stories just don't \_\_\_\_\_ up. One of them must be lying.

12. The group benefited from considerable media \_\_\_\_\_.

Maria did not find John attractive, but was rather flattered by his \_\_\_\_\_.

It's been brought to my \_\_\_\_\_ that there have been a number of thefts from the office.

13. It is very difficult to fully \_\_\_\_\_ certain pieces of jazz music until you've heard them a good few times.

Although I'm always ready to lend a hand, Maria never really seems to \_\_\_\_\_ the things I do for her.

Given the market for decorative antiques, I'd say that the value of the beautiful vase is set to \_\_\_\_\_ considerably in the next few years.

14. Melanie practised her lines each day after school, getting increasingly nervous as the date of her audition \_\_\_\_\_ even closer.

Although Tim had been in the lead for most of the race, as they reached the final bend, Graham \_\_\_\_\_ level and threatened to overtake him.

On the impulse, Laurie \_\_\_\_\_ all the money out of his bank account and went to London, intending to spend every last penny of it.

15. I was \_\_\_\_\_ by her resemblance to my aunt.

The speaker had obviously \_\_\_\_\_ a chord with his audience.

Later in the evening I \_\_\_\_\_ up a conversation with a teacher from France.

16. Ours is a school with a \_\_\_\_\_ on English.

Students were evaluated without \_\_\_\_\_.

He didn't really know there was racial \_\_\_\_\_ in his community.

17. The price includes morning coffee, \_\_\_\_\_ lunch and afternoon tea.

The British synonym to \_\_\_\_\_ is 'sideboard.'

As there was no \_\_\_\_\_ car on that train, she took some packed lunch with her.

18. The concert was a nice \_\_\_\_\_.

Their love \_\_\_\_\_ became known only after his death.

What I do in my free time is my own \_\_\_\_\_.

19. It took a few seconds for her eyes to \_\_\_\_\_ to the darkness.

Taste the soup and \_\_\_\_\_ the seasoning.

He paused to \_\_\_\_\_ his spectacles.

20. He asked to speak to the person in \_\_\_\_\_.

The hotel is quite cheap – they \_\_\_\_\_ only 25 pounds a night.

He was arrested on a \_\_\_\_\_ of burglary.

**Ex.3. For items 1-10 fill in the gaps in the text choosing an appropriate word from the column on the right. Choose one word once only. There are two extra words in the right column which you don't have to choose.**

An 11-year-old piano prodigy from Indonesia will appear at the prestigious Newport Jazz Festival after taking the American jazz (1) \_\_\_ by storm.

Joey Alexander, who releases his debut album '*My Favorite Things*' this week, has attracted high (2) \_\_\_ from trumpeter and director of Jazz at Lincoln Centre Wynton Marsalis, who has said: "There has never been anyone that you can think of who could play like that (3) \_\_\_ his age. I loved everything about his playing – his rhythm, his confidence, his understanding of the music".

Marsalis said he found out about Bali-born Alexander after a friend suggested he watched a YouTube clip of the then 10-year-old (4) \_\_\_ tunes by John Coltrane, Thelonious Monk and Chick Corea.

Now, to (5) \_\_\_ his debut album, Alexander is set to play at the Montreal and Newport jazz festivals.

Newport producer George Wein says he's always been reluctant to (6) \_\_\_ so-called child prodigies but he made an exception after Jeanne Moutoussamy-Ashe, tennis legend Arthur Ashe's widow, brought Alexander over to his Manhattan apartment to (7) \_\_\_ for him. "The thing that differs him from most young players is the maturity of his harmonic approach", Wein told AP reporter Charles J Gans. "His playing is very contemporary but he also has a (8) \_\_\_ of the history of the music", Alexander's parents were jazz fans and he himself admires the playing (9) \_\_\_ Horace Silver, McCoy Tyner, Bill Evans and Brad Mehldau. He also loves the Avengers and SpongeBob Squarepants.

"For me jazz is a calling. I love jazz because it's about freedom to express yourself and being spontaneous, full of rhythm and full of improvisation", said the young pianist. "Technique is important, but for me first when I play it's from the (10) \_\_\_ and feeling the groove. I want to develop by practicing and playing, and challenging myself to get better every day", said Alexander.

A. at  
B. book  
C. for  
D. heart  
E. of  
F. performing  
G. play  
H. praise  
I. promote  
J. pushing  
K. scene  
L. sense

**Ex.4. For items 1–10 fill in the gaps, using the words in the box. There are some extra words you don't have to use.**

arranged at exciting historic history Imperial near nearby on  
quiet quite relaxed scene scenery serving shade shadow  
the Imperial wander within wonder

Stay at (1) \_\_\_ Hotel.

Relax and enjoy the beautiful (2) \_\_\_ around you.

Would you like a game of golf and tennis? Or would you prefer to (3) \_\_\_ in remote hills on a sunny day? Or would you like just a (4) \_\_\_ rest in the (5) \_\_\_ of the garden?

Situated on the banks of the Thames, the hotel has a lot of facilities for young and old.

It is also (6) \_\_\_ easy reach of several interesting (7) \_\_\_ buildings, dated back to the 18th century.

Special food can be (8) \_\_\_ for vegetarians and those on a diet.

We can meet you at the (9) \_\_\_ station,, called 'The Thames Gardens', (10) \_\_\_ arrival. It's only a 5-minute drive from the station to the hotel.

Reasonable prices.

You will really enjoy staying here.

## 2. MULTIPLE CHOICE

**Ex.5. For questions 1–24, read the texts below and decide which answer (a), b), c) or d) best fits each gap.**

### A. The Victorian Music Hall

A favourite place of entertainment in Victorian Britain was the music hall. Shows were full of songs of all kinds, in which the audience joined in the chorus. Between 1900 and 1910, however, music halls (1) \_\_\_ a dramatic change in character and (2) \_\_\_ their emphasis on eating, drinking and singing, to variety shows, where family parties went to see, among other acts, great (3) \_\_\_ like Roman chariot races or diving contests. Although temporarily (4) \_\_\_ by the 1914–18 war, the music halls were to (5) \_\_\_ their popularity for many years after this. However, the advent of radio was to have an increasingly damaging effect on live entertainment and a further (6) \_\_\_ was dealt to the concept of live entertainment with the arrival of the cinema.

1	a) subjected	b) underwent	c) submitted	d) underlined
2	a) rearranged	b) fluctuated	c) relocated	d) shifted
3	a) spectacles	b) parades	c) exhibitions	d) displays
4	a) obstructed	b) halted	c) terminated	d) checked
5	a) retain	b) absorb	c) grasp	d) reserve
6	a) setback	b) disaster	c) blow	d) crash

### B. The Lord of the Rings

With the possible exception of *Star Wars*, no movie project has ever (7) \_\_\_ as challenging as the *Lord of the Rings*. It has been hyped as the ultimate production ever undertaken by Hollywood. How many films, after all, are acted out by a cast of elves, dwarves, trolls, giants, dragons and wizards, many of whom are somewhat (8) \_\_\_ characters? The big screen (9) \_\_\_ of JRR Tolkien's literary classic, the (10) \_\_\_ of which is the struggle of Good against Evil, may prove to be the movie of the decade. Translating such a book onto the silver screen, however, is no (11) \_\_\_ of cake. The 1978 animated version fell as (12) \_\_\_



as a pancake when it reached the box office. On the other hand, the story has a huge fan base and, most importantly, it has sold over 50 million copies world-wide in 25 languages.

7	a) claimed	b) proved	c) turned	d) resulted
8	a) dubious	b) debatable	c) wavering	d) unclear
9	a) conversion	b) adaptation	c) alteration	d) modification
10	a) matter	b) title	c) trend	d) theme
11	a) slice	b) bit	c) piece	d) chunk
12	a) small	b) round	c) thin	d) flat

### C. Sports Psychology

Sports psychology is the science of behaviour applied to exercise and sport participation. With levels of competition rising ever higher and differences between competing athletes being measured in fractions of a second, increasing numbers of sportsmen and women are using sports psychologists to help them gain a competitive (13) \_\_\_\_ . During the past decade major national organisations (14) \_\_\_\_ the area of sports psychology have emerged. Parallel increases have been apparent in the number of books on the topic, but there is a (15) \_\_\_\_ between the large amount of publicity about the field and relatively few trained professionals around. Until now it has been a comparatively unknown area academically, however, in the (16) \_\_\_\_ of the next few years, with a rising number of universities offering specialist training, this (17) \_\_\_\_ of affairs will be resolved as more and more people (18) \_\_\_\_ the profession in earnest.

13	a) rim	b) edge	c) lip	d) brim
14	a) attending	b) adopting	c) focusing	d) addressing
15	a) discrepancy	b) deviation	c) disagreement	d) dissimilarity
16	a) light	b) interval	c) course	d) duration
17	a) shape	b) status	c) situation	d) state
18	a) take up	b) take to	c) take in	d) take on

### D. U.S. Cricket

American cricket may sound like a contradiction in (19) \_\_\_\_, but over the coming years the game that is said to have given (20) \_\_\_\_ to the American national game of baseball is set to take the United States by (21) \_\_\_\_ . There will, however, be some (22) \_\_\_\_ differences between the traditional game most English people grew up with, and the US version.

The English developed the patience to watch a game over a (23) \_\_\_\_ of anything up to five days. Nowadays, with people's time being rather more limited – especially in America's work-oriented culture, the traditional game will have to adapt if it is to (24) \_\_\_\_ on there. Games are likely to be much shorter and to be played at night, which is a far cry from England's day long games, and, as with other American sports, the players are likely to be heavily protected against injury by thickly padded clothing.

19	a) expressions	b) terms	c) words	d) phrases
20	a) rise	b) growth	c) expansion	d) escalation
21	a) force	b) flood	c) surge	d) storm
22	a) lucid	b) respective	c) marked	d) flagrant
23	a) phase	b) time	c) term	d) period
24	a) count	b) catch	c) come	d) call

**Ex.6. Culture Quiz. Choose the right answer.**

- What famous event occurred on the 5th of November 1605?
  - The coronation of James I.
  - The gunpowder plot.
  - The union of England, Scotland, Ireland and Wales to form the UK.
  - The first tennis tournament at Wimbledon.
- Where can you find the skeleton of dinosaur and see a blue whale in London?
  - The Natural History Museum
  - The River Thames
  - The British Museum
  - Madame Tussaud's
- Which of the following was not a president of the United States?
  - Thomas Jefferson
  - George Washington
  - Abraham Lincoln
  - Gerry Adams
- The Pilgrims went to America for ... freedom.
  - religious
  - economic
  - political
  - personal
- Queen Elizabeth II became Queen in ...
  - 1942,
  - 1952,
  - 1962,
  - 1972
- Who is a Beefeater?
  - A Queen's Guard.
  - The oldest raven in the Tower of London.
  - The Tower of London's Yeomen Warder.
  - A regular soldier in the English army.
- Which Forest was the legendary home of one of Britain's most famous outlaws?
  - The New Forest
  - The Keilder forest
  - Robber Forest
  - Sherwood Forest.
- What or who is Big Ben?
  - A bell
  - A clock
  - A tower
  - A very tall person

9. Which country has the longest coastline?

- a) Great Britain b) Australia c) Canada d) The USA

10. Which county is known as the Garden of England?

- a) Lancashire b) Yorkshire c) Kent d) Sussex

11. Which of the following was not written by J.R.R. Tolkien?

- a) The Hobbit b) Farmer Giles of Ham c) Finn and Hengist  
d) The Elf Queen of Shannara

12. What is 'bangers and mash'?

- a) An English dish b) A type of firework  
c) Something Scottish people wear  
d) The name of the Welsh National Anthem

13. What do the Scots traditional eat on Burn's night?

- a) porridge b) haggis c) Black pudding d) hotcakes

14. What do the English traditionally eat on Shrove Tuesday?

- a) ice-cream b) mince pies c) Yorkshire pudding d) pancakes

15. Where was Sir Sean Connery born?

- a) Ireland b) Scotland c) Australia d) The USA

16. Which of the following definitions fits the expression 'He's all thumbs'?

- a) He is very big-headed. b) He is sick and tired.  
c) He is happy and merry. d) He is very clumsy.

17. 'To see ...' means to get very angry.

- a) red b) blue c) black d) white

18. Which of the following animals does not fit the simile 'as strong as ...'?

- a) a dog b) an ox c) a bull d) a horse

19. 'To have butterflies in your stomach' means ...

- a) to be extremely happy  
b) to be very nervous about something you have to do  
c) to be so excited about something that you can't keep still  
d) to be moving around quickly doing lots of things

20. If you are 'born with a silver spoon in your mouth', you ...
- a) speak in such a pleasant way that you can make other people do things for you
  - b) can sing very well
  - c) like sweet things
  - d) have a high social position and have been rich all your life

### 3. TRANSFORMATION

#### 3.1. TRANSFORMATION OF SENTENCES

**Ex.7. Rewrite these sentences using the words in brackets. There is an example at the beginning.**

**Example.** 0. His mother scolded him for not phoning to say where he was. (TOLD)  
 His mother **told him off** for not phoning to say where he was.

1. Whenever I sit in that armchair beside the fire, I fall asleep. (DOZE)

---

2. I'd have got home at 6 pm if a problem hadn't suddenly occurred at work. (CROP)

---

3. The boy got to this country by hiding in the hold of a plane. (STOWING)

---

4. I never expected DVDs to become popular. (CATCH)

---

5. It always takes a few hours for a dental anaesthetic to lose its effect. (WEAR)

---

6. We can organize the final details later. (SORT)

---

**Ex.8. Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between three and eight words, including the word given.**

7. He never stops criticising people.

LIMIT

There \_\_\_\_\_ criticising people.

8. It's not our habit to eat so early.

USED

We \_\_\_\_\_ so early.

9. What do you think of his appearance?

STRIKE

How \_\_\_\_\_ you?

10. That man has no pity whatsoever.

DEVOID

That man \_\_\_\_\_ pity.

11. We were elated by the birth of our first grandchild.

MOON

We \_\_\_\_\_ was born.

12. Our boss criticises our work all the time.

FAULT

Our boss \_\_\_\_\_ work.

13. Employees failing to abide by the rules will be dismissed on the spot.

SACK

Employees failing to abide by the rules \_\_\_\_\_ immediately.

14. I don't mind whether you come in the morning or the afternoon.

DIFFERENCE

It \_\_\_\_\_ in the morning or the afternoon.

15. Women outnumber men by two to one in Greece.

TWICE

There \_\_\_\_\_ in Greece.

16. Frances is unlikely to be promoted.

PROSPECT

There's \_\_\_\_\_ promoted.

### 3.2. TRANSFORMATION OF WORDS (WORD FORMATION)

Ex.9. For questions 1–15 (A) and 1–10 (B), read the texts below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

#### A. Elephant Training

<p>If you are travelling in Thailand and have a taste for adventure, you can now (0) <u>participate</u> in an unusual kind of activity. For an (1) _____ modest sum, you can spend a few days at an elephant (2) _____ centre training to be a mahout or elephant driver. Be prepared to get wet, however, because you spend most of the day atop an elephant, during which time this (3) _____ beast can take up to three baths!</p> <p>(4) _____ set up in an endeavour to preserve the Thai elephant, the centre offers such activities to tourists as a means of funding itself. Nevertheless, its training programme remains strictly in (5) _____ with the traditions of Kachasart, the ancient method of studying elephants, and the mahouts that work with the elephants build up a close, (6) _____ relationship with them, founded on mutual respect and love.</p> <p>The type of training depends on the (7) _____ that different animals display, and care is taken not to (8) _____ them. Training is believed to be (9) _____ to the elephants, providing them with physical and mental (10) _____. Their well-being is of utmost (11) _____, and the success of the centre's (12) _____ programme bears witness to this. While it may not be ideal to keep such magnificent beasts in (13) _____ – and the centre has come in for plenty of criticism – (14) _____ deforestation has left wild elephants struggling to survive in habitats that are shrinking almost on a (15) _____ basis. The centre offers them a sanctuary – for the time being at least.</p>	<p><b>PART</b></p> <p><b>CREDIBLE</b> <b>CONSERVE</b></p> <p><b>MAJESTY</b></p> <p><b>PRIMARY</b></p> <p><b>KEEP</b></p> <p><b>LIFE</b></p> <p><b>ABLE</b> <b>TIRE</b> <b>BENEFIT</b> <b>STIMULATE</b> <b>IMPORTANT</b> <b>BREED</b> <b>CAPTURE</b> <b>EXTEND</b> <b>DAY</b></p>
--	--

### B. City centre traffic problems

<p>The amount of traffic in the crowded (0) <u>central</u> districts of some of our largest cities is a major problem these days. Over the years, (1) _____ schemes of traffic management have been tried, none of which can be said to have been entirely (2) _____. In order to (3) _____ people to leave their cars at home, especially on shorter trips, it is becoming increasingly common for cities to impose a fee on those drivers who choose to come into the city centre. Some schemes take advantage of the latest technology – for example, in one city (4) _____ is made by a card on the car's windscreen which is scanned (5) _____. This is meant to speed up the flow of traffic, but the scheme has a major (6) _____ as the amount that drivers have to pay changes during the day and, as a result, it is not (7) _____ for long queues to build up just before a cheaper charging period comes into (8) _____. However, the system is gradually gaining in (9) _____ with motorists, although it has to be admitted it may not provide a total (10) _____ to the problem of traffic congestion.</p>	<p><b>CENTRE</b></p> <p><b>VARY</b> <b>SUCCESS</b> <b>COURAGE</b></p> <p><b>PAY</b> <b>AUTOMATIC</b> <b>ADVANTAGE</b></p> <p><b>USUAL</b> <b>OPERATE</b> <b>POPULAR</b> <b>SOLVE</b></p>
---	--

### 4. MULTIPLE MATCHING

Ex.10. Match the phrasal verbs in bold with one of the definitions given.

<p>1) I'll <b>call at</b> the travel agency to collect our tickets.  2) As soon as John reached Vienna he <b>was called back</b> to Paris.  3) She <b>was cleared of</b> the charges of negligence but some people still believe she's guilty.  4) His condition <b>calls for</b> immediate medical attention.  5) The meeting <b>was called off</b> due to the chairman's illness.  6) You'd better <b>call in</b> a solicitor before writing your will.  7) My cousin <b>was called up</b> at the age of 19 and died in Vietnam a year later.  8) The union has <b>called out</b> its members to try to get a better deal.  9) They <b>cleared out</b> the garage to make room for their new car.  10) The bully <b>cleared off</b> when he saw the teacher approaching.  11) It's been raining all morning but it seems to <b>be clearing up</b> now.  12) If you <b>cleared away</b> all these books, we'd have room to eat.</p>	<p>a) to cancel  b) to conscript  c) to ask to return  d) to run away  e) to brighten up (of the weather)  f) to visit briefly  g) to get rid of unwanted things  h) to remove, tidy  i) to cause one to go on strike  j) to find innocent  k) to consult  l) to require</p>
--	--

Ex.11. For items 1-8, match each person (1-8) with an appropriate phrasal verb (A-K) and a suitable object (a-i). There are two extra verbs in the second column, which you do not have to use. The first example (0) is done for you.

0. a parent	A) brings out	a) a child
1) a dangerous driver	A) <b>brings up</b>	b)
2) a dressmaker	C) drops by	c)
3) a judge	D) gets away	d)
4) a publisher	E) lets off	e)
5) a snob	F) takes off	f)
6) a successful criminal	G) looks up	g)
7) a traveler	H) runs down	h)
8) a visitor	I) sets out	i)
	J) takes in	
	K) looks down on	

## 5. CROSS-CULTURAL AWARENESS

Ex.12. Fill in the gaps in the notices below with *one* word. There is an example (0) at the beginning.

0. Charge your phone here.

1. Please \_\_\_\_\_ up these seats for disabled people.

2. Fire exit, keep \_\_\_\_\_.

3. It is an \_\_\_\_\_ to sell alcohol to any person under 18.

4. Private. \_\_\_\_\_ out.

5. Mind the \_\_\_\_\_ between the train and the platform.

6. \_\_\_\_\_ of the dog.

7. Keep \_\_\_\_\_ the grass.

8. Attention! The third step is \_\_\_\_\_.

9. Do not \_\_\_\_\_. (hanging on the door handle)

10. Fragile! Handle with \_\_\_\_\_.



**Ex.13.** In the table below there are quotations from famous people. For questions 1–8, match the beginning of the quotation from column A with its corresponding ending from column B. There are four extra endings which do not correspond to any quotation.

A	B
1) Good taste is better than bad taste,	a) who may get to be a boss and work twelve hours a day. <i>Robert Frost</i>
2) They know enough	b) you've understood all your life, but in a new way. <i>Doris Lessing</i>
3) Education is what survives when	c) who know how to learn. <i>Henry Brooks Adam</i>
4) That is what learning is. You suddenly understand something	d) and is essential for human happiness. <i>Galen</i>
5) It is true nature of mankind	e) what we are. <i>Claude-Adrien Helvitius</i>
6) Pennies do not come from heaven. They	f) what has been learnt has been forgotten. <i>B.F. Skinner</i>
7) The battle of Waterloo	g) to learn from mistakes not from examples. <i>Fred Hoyle</i>
8) Be not afraid of growing slowly, be afraid	h) can pay others to do for one. <i>W. Somerset Maugham</i>
	i) have to be earned here on earth. <i>Margaret Thatcher</i>
	j) was won on the playing fields of Eton. <i>Duke of Wellington</i>
	k) only of standing still. <i>Confusius</i>
	l) but bad taste is better than no taste. <i>Arnold Bennett</i>

**Ex.14.** For questions 1–4 restore famous English phrases first matching their beginnings (A–F) with the endings (1–6), there is one odd ending you don't need to use, and then match the phrases with their Latin equivalents. There is an example (0) for you.

0	Errare humanum est.	E1
1	Tempora mutntur et nos mutamur in illis.	
2	Repetitio est mater studiorum.	
3	Scientia est potentia.	
4	Vivere est cogitare.	

A	The times	1	is human. ( <i>Seneca</i> )
B	To live	2	is power. ( <i>Francis Bacon</i> )
C	Repetition	3	change, and we change with them.
D	Knowledge	4	are our future.
E	To err	5	is to think. ( <i>Cicero</i> )
F	Scientists	6	is the mother of learning

## PART V. TEST YOURSELF

### TASK 1

For items 1–15 fill in the gaps in the text choosing an appropriate word from the column on the right. Choose one word once only. There are two extra words in the right column which you don't have to choose.

When the spring sunshine peeps out from the clouds, and the world glistens after a shower of rain, there comes a moment in the year when a chap walks out if the door, inhales deeply and thinks: "Yes, today I'll leave the car (1) ___ and haul out the bike".	along
I know that hardy types ride their bikes at all times of year, but (2) ___ fair weather gardeners, we fair weather cyclists are not to be disparaged on account of our apparent lack of grit. For we are gentle ones. To us, cycling is a calm (3) ___. We may pant a bit on uphill stretches, and we may even (4) ___ and push our charges while other cyclists (the ones in national costume) power past us wearing sunglasses on the dreariest of days. But we enjoy our sedate pedaling and try not to frighten the (5) ___. We whistle softly to ourselves while admiring the gardens we can see over the tops of hedges. We may have a wicker basket on the front, or panniers on the back. We (6) ___ our bell to warn pedestrians of our (7) ___ and we are ever ready with a cheery: "Good morning!" This is quite unlike our bulging-limbed counterparts who seem to have muscles in places where we don't even have places and (8) ___ eyes are riveted firmly on the Tarmac.	approach
What has happened to cycling in the past 50 years? Especially in the case of the Mamil – or middle-aged man in lycra. I'm not averse to a bit of dressing up (9) ___ – give me a robe or a uniform and I will do my best to carry off the role to perfection – but the prospect of wearing all that figure-hugging rubber-woven stuff (10) ___ me with horror. Lycra, it seems to me, while rightly thought of as being extremely supportive, takes everything prisoner. Every bulge is enhanced; every anatomical deficiency is highlighted.	behind
How I (11) ___ for a cycling cape – that wonderfully useful shroud of bright yellow plastic that would cover a cyclist from top to toe and, when accompanied by a sturdy waterproof hat, would be guaranteed to keep out the severest wind. Gone with the wind, they are, (12) ___ with cycle clips. I still use mine, much to the amusement of my daughters, though I think they are preferable to trousers tucked into socks.	dismount
Gone, too, are mudguards. Have you (13) ___ how the speedy set have that brown stripe up their back, thanks to the efficiency of rear tyres in squirting up muddy water with all the ferocity of a badly plumbed bidet? Would a rear mudguard really slow them down? It would certainly endear them to their other halves who are probably slaves to the (14) ___ machine after every rainy outing.	down
	fills
	long
	myself
	noticed
	pursuit
	sends
	teenage
	tinkle
	unlike
	washing
	whose
	wildlife

<p>And then there are the shoes. Because these racing bikes don't have proper pedals, cyclists must wear that appear to be running shoes with big humps on the soles. When they dismount and walk down the high street in search of sustenance, they do so with a wobble and a clack like a (15) ____ girl in her first pair of stilettos. Their hats – sorry, helmets – make them look like homeless tortoises.</p> <p>It must cost hundreds of pounds to buy all this apparel. And the bikes? Thousands.</p>	
--	--

## TASK 2

**For questions 1–6, think of *one* word only which can be used appropriately in all three sentences.**

1. With less than a minute of the football match to go, Phil managed to \_\_\_\_ the ball into the back of the net.

I think the best course of action would be to jump into the car and \_\_\_\_ for Bristol as soon as possible.

Louise has been asked to \_\_\_\_ an investigation into what went wrong on the night of the accident.

2. One player hit the \_\_\_\_ and another just missed the post.

That \_\_\_\_ offers live music and is usually packed on a Friday and Saturday night.

The wrapped \_\_\_\_ of soap only came into use at the beginning of the last century.

3. The president promised to take no \_\_\_\_ measures in order to improve the company's productivity.

The forest looked eerie in the \_\_\_\_ light.

The top \_\_\_\_ of the statue was knocked down, while the base remains.

4. They gazed over a wide \_\_\_\_ leading to a distant range of mountains.

The facts are \_\_\_\_ and simple. There's no money!

They serve \_\_\_\_ food there, nothing fancy and at quite reasonable prices.

5. The chess champion held off a serious \_\_\_\_ from his younger opponent in the last match of the tournament.

The chairman of the meeting seemed to regard questions from the audience as some kind of \_\_\_\_ to his authority.

You'll find some aspects of the job a real \_\_\_\_, but we're confident that you can cope.

6. The police are failing to take adequate measures to \_\_\_\_\_ the growth of crime.  
 I said good-bye and went to \_\_\_\_\_ in my suitcase.  
 Keep a careful \_\_\_\_\_ on your pressure to avoid serious problems with your heart.

7. Please \_\_\_\_\_ the terrible state of this room. I haven't had time to tidy up.  
 I know that she's under a lot of pressure, but nothing can \_\_\_\_\_ her terrible behaviour.  
 Would you \_\_\_\_\_ me for a moment – I need to leave the room and make a phone call.

8. The latest \_\_\_\_\_ of the magazine includes interviews with all sorts of celebrities.  
 This is a very important \_\_\_\_\_ and we should discuss it seriously.  
 When she decided to leave the job, money wasn't the \_\_\_\_\_ -- she left because of the hours.

9. Is there anything of \_\_\_\_\_ on the news?  
 It is not in your \_\_\_\_\_ to leave the company now.  
 We had to pay a very high \_\_\_\_\_ rate on the loan from the bank.

10. I'm going to \_\_\_\_\_ her to a special meal in an expensive restaurant for her birthday.  
 Paul is an unpopular boss because he tends to \_\_\_\_\_ his employees very badly.  
 The doctors are sure that it's the best medicine to \_\_\_\_\_ her illness.

### TASK 3

For items 1–5, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You should use between three and six words, including the word given. The first example (0) is done for you.

**Example.** 0. *I consider him my worst enemy.*

LOOK

*I \_\_\_\_\_ enemy.*

*I look upon him as my worst enemy.*

1. Even if we drive very fast, we'll never get to the theatre on time.

HOW

No \_\_\_\_\_, we'll never get to the theatre on time.

2. At no time did we think that Mike might be planning to leave London.

OCCURRED

It \_\_\_\_\_ that Mike might be planning to leave London.

3. Paula had just reached the gate when it began to rain.

THAN

No sooner \_\_\_\_\_ it began to rain.

4. He behaved in an incomprehensible way at the party.

BEYOND

His \_\_\_\_\_ our comprehension.

5. You may not have noticed but Sam is wearing an engagement ring.

ESCAPED

It \_\_\_\_\_ notice but Sam is wearing an engagement ring.

#### TASK 4

For items 1–7, match the item in the left-hand column (1–6) with its definition in the right-hand column (A–K). There are four extra definitions in the right-hand column, which you do not have to use.

1) Sainsbury's	A) a government agency to help the unfortunate, the unlucky, and the poor
2) Social Services	B) welfare
3) Social Security	C) a club for elderly people over 65 years
4) Toad in the Hole	D) exams
5) VAT	E) a batter pudding containing sausages
6) Wellingtons	F) a batter pudding minus sausages
7) Yorkshire Pudding	G) a tax
	H) a store selling cheap, fashionable furniture
	I) where teachers, vicars and suchlike do their food shopping
	J) a proletarian sea-side resort
	K) rubber boots

## TASK 5.

For questions 1-15, read the text below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line. There is an example at the beginning (0).

It must be said that Dover was not (0) <i>vastly</i> improved by daylight but I liked it. I liked its small scale and cosy air, and the way everyone said 'Good morning' and 'Hello', and 'Dreadful weather – but it must (1) _____ up', to each other, and the sense that this was just one more in a very long series of quiet, well-ordered, pleasantly (2) _____ days. Nobody in the whole Dover would have any particular reasons to remember 21 March 1973, except for me and a (3) _____ of children born that day. I didn't know how early one could (4) _____ begin asking for a room in England, so I thought I would leave it till mid-morning. With time on my hands, I made a thorough search for a guesthouse that looked (5) _____ and quiet, friendly and not too (6) _____, and at the stroke of ten o'clock presented myself on the doorstep of the one I had (7) _____ selected, taking care not to (8) _____ the milk bottles.	<b>VAST</b>
It was a small hotel that was really a guesthouse. I don't remember its name, but I well remember the (9) _____. She showed me to a room, then gave me a tour of the facilities and (10) _____ the many complicated rules for (11) _____ there.	<b>BRIGHT EVENT</b>
This was all (12) _____ new to me. Where I came from, one got a room in a motel, spent ten hours making a lavish and possibly (13) _____ mess of it, and left early the next morning without a slight desire to (14) _____ it later. This was like (15) _____ the army.	<b>HAND</b>
	<b>DECENT ATTRACT COST CAREFUL COMPOSE</b>
	<b>PROPRIETOR LINE RESIDE BEWILDER REPAIR CALL JOIN</b>

## TASK 6

For items 1–6, choose from the box the necessary animal (1–15) that would fit in the gap of the given sentences to produce a proverb or an idiom, then match the sentence with the correct definition (A–G). There are some extra words in the box, which you do not have to use. The first example (0) is done for you.

*Example: 0. It's raining ... and ...*

2, 6 E

1. cat 2. cats 3. cow 4. dog 5. cows 6. dogs 7. goats 8. horse 9. lion 10. mice  
11. rabbit 12. sheep 13. tiger 14. dogs 15. bee

- When the ...'s away the ... will play.
- That's a ... of a different colour.
- Better to be a live ... than a dead ...

4. To separate the .... from the ... .
5. To go to the ... .
6. To have a ... in your bonnet.

**Definitions:**

- A) a situation or a subject far from what you expected
- B) there are some situations when being a coward is an advantage
- C) when a person in authority is absent, those under the person's rule will enjoy their freedom
- D) to deteriorate, to become bad
- E) something that you say when it is raining very heavily
- F) to group people or things into superior and inferior
- G) to be very worried or concerned about something and to talk about it all the time

**TASK 7**

**For questions 1–13, read the text below and decide which answer a), b), c) or d) best fits each gap. There is an example (0) at the beginning.**

*Example: 0 a) note b) message c) text d) letter*

**Bad Body Language**

Today is one of those red (0) **letter** days. You've got a big job interview and you really want to get the position that you're applying (1) \_\_\_\_\_. Your interview has been arranged for ten o'clock in the morning so you (2) \_\_\_\_\_ bright and early to make sure you get there on time.

You go into the building where the meeting (3) \_\_\_\_\_ to be held and take the lift to the fourteenth floor. You enter a very (4) \_\_\_\_\_ office where a well-dressed secretary asks you politely to have a (5) \_\_\_\_\_. You feel relaxed. You cross your legs and sit with your hands clasped loosely on your (6) \_\_\_\_\_.

Then, your name is (7) \_\_\_\_\_ and you are ushered into the inner office. Suddenly, you (8) \_\_\_\_\_ out in a cold sweat. You feel nervous and you've got (9) \_\_\_\_\_ in your stomach. You shake the interviewer's hand and you know your palm is (10) \_\_\_\_\_. You sit facing the interviewer with your arms (11) \_\_\_\_\_ tightly in defensive pose. You are on (12) \_\_\_\_\_ and your body language clearly indicates this fact. Deep (13) \_\_\_\_\_ you know you are never going to get this job.

1	a) on	b) in	c) for	d) from
2	a) set of	b) pull away	c) leave out	d) go up
3	a) is	b) must	c) have	d) ought
4	a) clever	b) smart	c) keen	d) brisk
5	a) chair	b) sofa	c) seat	d) place
6	a) hip	b) chest	c) lap	d) knee
7	a) screamed	b) yelled	c) roared	d) called
8	a) break	b) bend	c) twist	d) sprain
9	a) bees	b) worms	c) months	d) butterflies
10	a) sweaty	b) damp	c) soggy	d) humid
11	a) crossed	b) hugged	c) packed	d) covered
12	a) rim	b) end	c) edge	d) limit
13	a) behind	b) down	c) back	d) over

### TASK 8

**Make the underlined words more or less formal, as in the instructions in brackets. Rewrite the sentences. There is an example at the beginning (0).**

0. *I am sure that a month's holiday would be good for you.* (more formal)

*I am sure that a month's holiday would be beneficial for you.*

1. Would you like to come to my house for as meal? (less formal)

2. If the owner of the estate died without any children, the land became the property of the government. (more formal)

3. We are not allowed to bring beverages into the lecture room. (less formal)

4. There's a newsagent's. Shall we buy as newspaper? (less formal)

5. Karen is very brainy. She'll do well at university. I'm sure. (more formal)

6. Oh yes, Pascal is an old pal of mine. I've known him for years. He's a nice chap. (more formal; 2 marks)

7. I had a kip in the afternoon, then I worked all evening. (more formal)



8. Would you like to go to a public house for a meal one day? (less formal)

9. He tried to board the train without a ticket, and got stopped by the inspector. (less formal) \_\_\_\_\_

### TASK 9

For questions 1–4 look at this gender-biased advertisement for an airline. Change the underlined words into more neutral equivalents to make the advertisement politically correct. The initial letters of the equivalents are given. There is an example (0) at the beginning.

*Example: businessman – business person.*

**Now! Eagle Airlines offers even more to those who need comfort.**

Any 0. businessman knows (1) he must arrive fresh and ready for work no matter how long the journey. With Eagle Diplomat-Class you can do just that. Let us fly you to your destination in first-class comfort, looked after by the best-trained (2) air hostesses in the world. And, what's more, your (3) wife can travel with you on all international flights for only 25 % of the normal fare! We even sell fancy (4) American Indian crafts on board!

he – t \_\_\_\_\_

air hostesses – f \_\_\_\_\_ a \_\_\_\_\_

wife – s \_\_\_\_\_

American Indian – N \_\_\_\_\_ A \_\_\_\_\_

### TASK 10

For questions 1–5 look at the notices below with their 'translations' into everyday English. Fill in the gaps. There is an example (0) at the beginning.

*Example: 0. Reduce speed now. – Start going more slowly.*

1. T _____ will be prosecuted.	People who walk on this private land will be taken to court.
2. Kindly r _____ from smoking in the auditorium.	Please don't smoke in the theatre/hall.
3. Cyclists d _____ here.	Cyclists should get off their bikes here.
4. A _____ for ticket holders only.	You can enter only if you have a ticket.
5. P _____ for dropping litter up to \$100 fine.	You can be taken to court and made to pay \$100 for dropping rubbish.

**TASK 11.**

Match the proper names (1–10) in A with their associated meanings (a–l) in B. There are two points in B which you do not have to use.

A	B
1) Whitehall 2) Scotland Yard 3) Fleet Street 4) Old Bailey 5) Oxford Street 6) Covent Garden 7) Albert Hall 8) Oxbridge 9) Number 10 10) Chelsea	a) newspaper publishing b) fashionable shops c) expensive housing d) civil service e) high-quality education f) opera g) medicine h) concerts i) justice j) policing k) UK government l) banks

# ANSWER KEY

## PART I. MASTER YOUR PREPOSITIONS

**Ex.1:** 1 in, 2 at, 3 in, 4 in, 5 at, 6 in, 7 in, 8 at, 9. At, 10 at; **Ex.2:** 1 beside, 2 around, 3 below, 4 behind, 5 among, 6 in, 7 above, 8 beneath, 9 in, 10 on, 11 over, 12 in, 13 in, 14 behind; **Ex.4:** on, above, on, behind, in, on, in, in front of, at, on, Above, on. **Ex.5:** A: 1 in, on, 2 next to, 3 beside, 4 on, 5 next to, 6 behind, 7 by, 8 in, 9 behind, 10 above, 11 around, 12 in, 13 on, 14 by, 15 in, across, 16 on, beside/next to, 17 under/on, in, 18 at, in, 19 across, 20 in. B: in, at, in, opposite, in, on, above, at, below, next to/near; C: in, by, on, on, at, off, by/near, far from/off; D: in, in, on, off of, at, to, from; E: in, to, in, in, in, in; F: in, On, from, behind, in; G: In, of, around, in, in, by. **Ex.6:** 1 over, across, 2 out of, 3 into, 4 to, 5 through, 6 past, 7 on to, 8 across, 9 into, 10 across, 11 past, through, over, under, across, 12 off, into, across, out of, across, over, in, over, off on to. **Ex.7:** 1 for, 2 in, 3 to, 4 to, 5 to, 6 at, 7 to; **Ex.8:** A: 1 in, in, 2 around, 3 over, in/around, 4 on, 5 into, on, beside, 6 in, 7 in, in, in, 8 between, on, 9 around, In, 10 to, in, 11 in, in, in, 12 to, 13 for, 14 across, opposite, 15 in, 16 to, down, 17 out of, towards, 18 next to, 19 on, off, 20 above, 21 at, by, 22 in, over, 23 under, on, 24 into; B: in, to, through, to, At, among, out of, to, up to, to, at; C: in/at, to, in, below, by, in, in, from, to, for. **Ex.9:** In, in, at, on, in, In, on, in, on, on, on, in; **Ex.10:** in, -, -, On, -, in, -, in, at, at, in, In, at, in, -, -, at. **Ex.11:** A: 1 at, at, 2 at, 3 on, in, 4 in, 5 in, 6 In, On, 7 at, in, 8 on, 9 at, 10 at. B: 1 till, 2 before, 3 till, 4 till, 5 till, 6 before, 7 before, 8 before, 9 till, 10 before; C: By, 2 since, 3 By, 4 since, 5 by, 6 since; D: 1 for, 2 during, 3 for, 4 during, 5 during, 6 For, 7 for, during, 8 for. **Ex.12:** in, from, to, in, till, during, in, by, before, in, for, after, Since. **Ex.13:** at, for, since, from, to/till/until, during, for, for, -, on, -. **Ex.14:** from, in, in, from, from, between, through, among, During, For, In, since. **Ex.15:** A: **Ex.16:** on, by, on the (boat), by, by, on the (bus), by, in the (car), on, in his (lorry), by, on the (plane), by a (motorbike), on an/his (old motorbike). **Ex.17:** 1 of, with, in, out of, like, with, on, like; 2 of, with, in, with, on, like; 3 with, in, like, with, in. **Ex.18:** 1 by, 2 out of, 3 like, 4 as, 5 by, 6 between, 7 out of, 8 of, 9 out of, 10 from, 11 of (about), with, 12 between, 13 by, 14 for, 15 from, 16 for, 17 for, 18 to, 19 to, 20 to. **Ex.20:** to, to, about, about, to, to, to, about, to, about. **Ex.21:** 1 with, 2 about, 3 with, 4 with, 5 about, 6 about, 7 with, 8 with, 9 with, 10 about. **Ex.22:** of, at, at, of, of, on, at, of, in. **Ex.23:** good (at), responsible (for), careful (about), efficient (at), patient (with), interested (in), polite (to), tired (of), capable (of), bored (with). **Ex.24:** about, for, for, for, to, to, to, for, to, to, after. **Ex.25:** 1 to, 2 at, 3 at, 4 to, 5 to, to, 6 at, to, 7 at, 8 to. **Ex.26:** for, for, to, in, as, in, as, in, of, in, to, from. **Ex.27:** 1 from, 2 to, 3 of, 4 on, 5 about, 6 of, 7 about, 8 about, 9 on, 10 from, 11 of, 12 from. **Ex.28:** 1 at, to, 2 at, at, 3 in, 4 at, 5 to, to, 6 to, in, in, at, 7 at, on, 8 for, 9 on, 10 on, 11 for, 12 on, on, 13 -, at, 14 for, 15 at, 16 for, 17 -, 18 to, 19 on, 20 on. **Ex.29:** of, for, to, about, on/about, on/about, on/about, about, on/about, about, by, with, to, for, in, of, of, for, of, in, of, in. **Ex.30:** 1 to, 2 in, 3 in, 4 on, 5 for, 6 of, 7 of, 8 in, 9 to, 10 of. **Ex.31:** 1 of, 3 in, 4 in, 5 by, 6 in, 7 by, 8 in, 9 in, 10 on, 11 out of, 12 on, 13 out of, 14 in, in, 15 in, 16 on, under, 17 under, 18 by, 19 on, 20 under, 21 Under, 22 in, 23 in, 24 by, 25 on. **Ex.32:** 1. at work, 2 fall in, 3 on purpose, 4 on business, 5 decrease in, 6 up to date, 7 on purpose, 8 without delay, 9 under age, 10 on good terms, 11 on time, 12 in time. **Ex.33:** 1 for, 2 at, 3 under, 4 to, 5 on, 6 for, 7 by, 8 of, 9 On, 10 under, 11 With, 12 within. **Ex.34:** 1 on behalf, 2 In case of, 3 in favour of, 4 by means of, 5 in common with, 6 by all means, 7 by heat, 8 all by yourself, 9 on the whole, 10 by surprise, 11 for myself, 12 At times, 13 out of doors, 14 beyond recognition, 15 from force of habit, **Ex.35:** lapse of memory, matter of opinion, train of thought, offer of help, crack of dawn, point of view, price of fame, sign of trouble, time of day, waste of time,

sign of success, language of love; 1 sign of success, 2 point of view, 3 waste of time, 4 price of fame, 5 offer of help, 6 lapse of memory, 7 time of day, 8 matter of opinion, 9 train of thought, 10 crack of dawn, 11 sign of trouble, 12 language of love. **Ex.36:** 1 for, 2 on, 3 for, 4 in, 5 on, 6 in, 7 of, 8 about, 9 from, 10 of, 11 to, 12 about, 13 to, 14 at, 15 to, 16 by, 17 at, 18 in, 19 in, since, 20 During, at. **Ex.37: A:** to, with, over, from, to/for, of, into, with, of, on, with, for, about, from, to, of, in, with, for, about, of, to, on. B: on, At, with, at, for, To, for, of, at, by, in, in, about, At, to, of, to, from, on, from, to, in, on, on, at, about, at, with. C: under, by, from, on, In, to, on, by, for, For, to, about, in, at, In, for, at, in, In, from, without. D: in, to, with, on, of, by, to, for, from, of, in, of, for, in, to, to, for, from, to, on, for. **Ex.38:** 1d, 2b, 3a, 4a, 5c, 6b, 7a, 8c, 9a, 10d, 11b, 12c, 13a, 14c, 15d, 16b, 17a, 18c, 19d, 20a, 21b, 22c, 23a, 24b, 25c, 26b, 27a. **Ex.39:** 1 to, 2 with, 3 against, 4 from, 5 at, 6 to, 7 of, 8 with, 9 from, 10 to, 11 in, 12 to, 13 for, 14 with, 15 on, 16 from, 17 for, 18 for, 19 to, 20 on, 21 with, 22 about, 23 of, 24 from, into, 25 with, 26 from, 27 for, 28 to, 29 in, 30 with, 31 out of, 32 on, 33 to, 34 for, 35 of, 36 around, 37 on, 38 at, 39 by, 40 at, 41 in, 42 at, 43 in, 44 on, 45 on, 46 on, 47 for, 48 for, 49 to, 50 to. **Ex.40:** 2 decided on the ... hotel, 3 a cure for cancer, 4 abstain from smoking, 5 identical to the one, 6 concentrate on his studies, 7 result in the dismissal, 8 blame the assistant for, 9 been at war with, 10 that she was on (the) air, 11 he's under age, 12 was out of breath, 13 applies only to disabled people, 14 congratulated him on winning, 15 you are on a diet, 16 was in a bad mood, 17 explains ... in detail.

## PHRASAL VERBS

**UP:** (Possible answers) 1. brought up 2. stood up 3. look (it) up 4. get up 5. calling (her) up 6. pulled up 7. Do up 8. keep up 9. held up 10. turn up 11. broke up 12. put ... up 13. coming up 14. take (it) up 15.. make up 16. went up 17. making ... up 18. came up 19. give up 20. go up.

**DOWN:** (Possible answers) 1. turn down, 2. cut down, 3. fell down, 4. run down, 5. put/write down, 6. let (you) down, 7. broke down, 8. bring down, 9. turned down, 10. put (her) down, 11. bring down, 12. take ... down, 13. let down, 14. break down, 15. turned down, 16. break down, 17. keep down, 18. let down, 19. let (you) down, 20. fall down.

**OUT:** (Possible answers) 1. cut out, 2. keep out, 3. Look out, 4. pulled out, 5. set out, 6. passed out, 7. gave out, 8. broke out, 9. fell out, 10. come out, 11. turns out, 12. make out, 13. turned out, 14. let (it) out, 15. go out, 16. put out, 17. take (you) out, 18. give out, 19. call out, 20. carry out.

**IN/INTO:** (Possible answers) 1. put ... into, 2. go into, 3. see (someone) into, 4. look into, 5. look it, 6. let (you) in, 7. give in, 8. hand (it) in, 9. pull in, 10. take (her) in, 11. bring in, 12. call in, 13. broke in, 14. gets in, 15. taken in, 16. break in, 17. brings in, 18. come in, 19. give in, 20. put in, 21. Is (Tom) in? 22. give in.

**OFF:** (Possible answers) 1. set off, 2. cut off, 3. told (her) off, 4. broke off, 5. see (her) off, 6. call off, 7. giving off, 8. get off, 9. take off, 10. take off, 11. let (him) off, 12. turn off, 13. set off, 14. put off, 15. put off, 16. fall off, 17. break off, 18. cut off, 19. go off, 20. let (her) off.

**ON:** (Possible answers) 1. catch on, 2. look on, 3. go/keep on, 4. get on, 5. keep on, 6. turn on, 7. put on, 8. called on, 9. taken on, 10. go on, 11. called on, 12. come on, 13. take on, 14. getting on, 15. put on, 16. Turn on, 17. take on, 18. call on, 19. put on, 20. keep on, 21. catch on, 22. catch on, 23. pass on, 24. bring on, 25. look on.

**AWAY:** (Possible answers) 1. gives (them) away, 2. is away, 3. took away, 4. break away, 5. giving away, 6. gave... away, 7. take ... away, 8. get away, 9. go away, 10. do away, 11. keep away, 12. put away, 13. turn away, 14. passed away, 15. run away, 16. pass away, 17. put away, 18. do away, 19. Go away, 20. get away.

**BACK:** (Possible answers) 1. Putting (it) back, 2. take back, 3. fall back, 4. given back, 5. turned back, 6. Looking back, 7. fall back, 8. holding back, 9. take ... back, 10. fall back, 11. coming back, 12. look back, 13. take back, 14. come back, 15. turn back, 16. call back, 17. be/come back, 18. brought back.

**THROUGH:** (Possible answers) 1. be through, 2. broke through, 3. get through, 4. looking through, 5. getting through, 6. put through, 7. fallen through, 8. look through, 9. going through, 10. put ... through, 11. going through, 12. break through, 13. gone through, 14. breaking through, 15. got through.

### PHRASAL VERBS REVIEW:

**7.2.1:** A. 1. down, 2. up 3. off 4. about 5. round 6. up; out 7. about 8. in, 9. off 10. up 11. away, 12. up 13. for, 14. for, 15. at, 16. down, 17. down, 18. off 19. on, 20. away, 21. off 22. in, 23. off 24. on, 25. round, 26. up 27. up 28. down, 29. into, 30. up 31. off 32. out, 33. out, 34. up 35. up 36. across, 37. up 38. up 39. into, 40. over, 41. up 42. off 43. through, 44. in, 45. out, 46. for, 47. in, 48. off 49. on, 50. to, 51. up 52. down, 53. out, 54. up 55. up.

B. 1. was up 2. got away with, 3. look after, 4. gave it up 5. passed out, 6. got over it, 7. took up 8. went after, 9. gone off 10. go over, 11. went on with, 12. go with.

**7.2.2:** A: 1C, 2B, 3A, 4B, 5B, 6D, 7C, 8A, 9C, 10C, 11D, 12A, 13B, 14A, 15C, 16B, 17A, 18B. B: 1B, 2C, 3A, 4C, 5A, 6C, 7C, 8A, 9D, 10D, 11B, 12D, 13A, 14A, 15A, 16B, 17C, 18D, 19C, 20D, 21B, 22C, 23A, 24C.

**7.2.3:** possible answers: 1. It will turn up ... 2. The treaty sets out the terms ... 3. Don't be taken in ... 4. Is there enough juice to go round? 5. I can't make her out. 6. I can't put up with ... 7. The box gave out/off the smell of fish, 8. ... but she let us down. 9. You're pulling my leg. 10. We are going to have our bedroom done up. 11. How exactly did this situation come about? 12. Let's get down to this business. 13. Carol has trouble getting her ideas across to others. 14. What are you getting at? 15. He broke off to ... 16. ... because something is up. 17. ... she made for the door. 18. ... you have made up the whole story/made the whole story up.

**7.2.4:** possible answers: 1. get by, 2. get through, 3. do up 4. getting ... through, 5. put off 6. put you through, 7. keep up 8. put down, 9. brought up 10. be brought up 11. take up 12. getting (me) down, 13. getting up 14. brought up 15. look into, 16. took up 17. ran over, 18. looking forward to, 19. take in, 20. came up against, 21. look (it) up 22. taken over, 23. look at, 24. gave back, 25. turned down, 26. broke off 27. made up 28. see (you) off 29. took to/fell for, 30. call on/look in on, 31. get on, 32. let (them) down, 33. looked up to, 34. got over, 35. look down on.

**7.2.5:** 1. Turn off the lights... 2. You should look up this word/look this word up in a dictionary. 3. The athletics meeting was put off ... 4. The doctor told David to give up football. 5. Could you put down all the details.../put all the details down... 6. Jack turned up half-way ... 7. We can put you up for a week. 8. Helen is getting on with ... 9. Paula was brought up by her grandparents ... 10. ... we set off. 11. How do you turn on ... 12. When did you take it up? 13. Carol looked up the dates/looked the dates up ... 14. ... you should give it up. 15. Martin does up his room/does his room up ...

**7.2.6:** 1. put up; put down, 2. looked up to; looked down on, 3. be in; go out, 4. stood up; sit down, 5. turned on; turned off, 6. go up; go down, 7. take off; Put (them) on, 8. took ... down; put (it) up, 9. break up; go back, 10. Is ... in; is away.

**7.2.7:** 1A, 2B, 3A, 4D, 5C, 6C.

**7.2.8:** A: 1. on, 2. up, 3. by, 4. down, 5. out, 6. through, 8. in, 9. in, 10. on.

B: 1. out, 2. for, 3. out, 4. off, 5. at, 6. out, 7. off, 8. off, 9. over, 10. up.

C: 1. up, 2. up, 3. back, 4. on, 5. down, 6. off, 7. away.

D: 1. out, 2. to, 3. back, 4. up, 5. off, 6. back, 7. up, 8. on, 9. round, 10. Over

**7.3.2:** 1b, 2a, 3e, 4d, 5c, 6g, 7f, 8h, 9j, 10i. **7.3.3:** 1. breakthrough, 2. takeaway, 3. break-up, 4. take-off, 5. outbreak, 6. giveaways, 7. break-in, 8. breakdown, 9. getaway, 10. outcome, 11. comeback, 12. make-up, 13. upbringing, 14. hold-up, 15. setback. **7.3.4:** 1. broke out; outbreak, 2. breaking into; break-in, 3. broke down, breakdown, 4. taking off; take-off, 5. broke out; outbreak, 6. brought ... up; upbringing, 7. looking on; onlookers, 8. got away; getaway, 9. looking on; onlookers, 10. got together; get-together.

## PART II. WIDEN YOUR VOCABULARY

**Ex.4:** disagree, misinform, disobey, disappear, disapprove, disqualify; misbehave, misunderstand, misspell, mispronounce; undress, unblock, unbutton.

**Ex.5:** 1 misunderstood, 2 unpacked, 3 disappeared, 4 disagree, 5 rewrite, 6 overslept, 7 unlock, 8 disliked, 9 retake, 10 reopen, 11 overworked, 12 unwrap. **Ex.6:** 2 a semicircle, 3 foreground, 4 a tricycle, 5 an international, 6 extra-large, 7 maladjusted, 8 arch-enemy. **Ex.7:** 1 dissatisfied, 2 unusual, 3 undecided, 4 trans-Atlantic, 5 vice-president, 6 non-smoker, 7 informal, 8 unfair, 9 rewritten, 10 overcooked. **Ex.8:** 1 overwork, 2 invisible, 3 subway, 4 autobiography, 5 ex-wife, 6 misleading, 7 semi-final, 8 unable, 9 non-stop, 10 disappeared. **Ex.9:** 1 pseudo-scientific, 2 hyperactive, 3 outlived, 4 uniform, 5 neo-fascist, 6 foretell, 7 bicycle, 8 monorail, 9 triplets, 10 apolitical. **Ex.11:** television, election, education, government, weakness, stupidity, management, improvement. **Ex.14:** thirsty, guilty, lively, stormy, sleepy, silly, cloudy, lengthy. **Ex.15:** painless, useless, careless, tactless, thoughtless. **Ex.20:** suggested answers: 1 careful, 2 misty, 3 famous, 4 helpful, 5 dangerous, 6 painful, 7 convenient, 8 industrial, 9 undrinkable, 10 homeless. **Ex.22:** 1 innermost, 2 telescope, 3 troublesome, 4 southwards, 5 picturesque, 6 statuette, 7 gosling, 8 flat-let, 9 seascape, 10 booklet. **Ex.23:** 1 refreshment, 2 disapproval, 3 eagerness, 4 procedures, 5 insignificance, 6 simplicity, 7 secrecy, 8 membership, 9 breakage, 10 likelihood, 11 independence, 12 anxiety. **Ex.24:** 1 inventor, 2 ability, 3 relationship, 4 patience, 5 argument, 6 performance, 7 sadness, 8 explanation. **Ex.25:** 1 mispronounce, 2 careless, 3 freedom, 4 dissatisfied, 5 thoughtful, 6 homeless, 7 greatness, 8 friendship, 9 an employee, 10 overnight, 11 trumpeter, 12 musician. **Ex.27:** 1 a) Production, b) producers, c) unproductive, 2 a) unadvisable, b) advisory, c) advisability, 3 a) stabilise, b) instability, c) unstable, 4 a) residence, b) residential, c) residents, 5 a) comforting, b) uncomfortable, c) discomfort, 6 a) deaths, b) deadly, c) deaden, 7 a) discourage, b) courageously, c) encouragement, 8 a) unrealistic, b) reality, c) realist, 9 a) friendship, b) befriended, c) unfriendly, 10 a) sensation, b) insensitive, c) senseless, 11 a) possessions, b) possessive, c) possessor, 12 a) formative, b) deformation, c) formation, 13 a) differently, b) differentiate, c) differences, 14 a) activists, b) activated, c) inactive, 15 a) managers, b) unmanageable, c) managerial. **Ex.31:** A: 1 watering, 2 eyeing, 3 face, 4 nose, 5 milk, 6 supper, 7 handed, 8 cooked, 9 nail, 10 fingered, B: 1

speeding, 2 toyed, 3 staffed, 4 poison, 5 dogs, 6 place, 7 shelter, 8 elbowing, 9 trapped, 10 fished, 11 headed, 12 pinned. **Ex.35:** 1 traffic jam, 2 film star, 3 alarm clock, 4 waiting room, 5 baby-sitter, 6 sunglasses, 7 income tax, 8 parking meter, 9 first aid, 10 science fiction. **Ex.36:** 1e, 2, 3a, 4g, 5, 6h, 7g, 8c. **Ex.37:** 1 gunfire, 2 thunderstorm, 3 handwriting, 4 haircut, 5 soap powder, 6 crash helmet, 7 bookcase, 8 rainbow, 9 footsteps, 10 fireplace. **Ex.38:** 1d, 2, 3g, 4e, 5c, 6h, 7f, 8j, 9l, 10k, 11i, 12b; 1) high-flier, 2) busybody, 3) tough cookie, 4) killjoy, 5) daredevil, 6) couch potato. **Ex.39:** 1 well travelled, 2 well known, 3 well mannered, 4 well brought up, 5 well spoken, 6 well thought of, 7 well documented, 8 well run, 9 well paid, 10 well informed, 11 well thought out, 12 well kept. **Ex.42:** 1 fed-up, 2 head-on, 3 laid-back, 4 one-off, 5 unheard-of, 6 cut-out. **Ex.44A:** 1 dangerous-looking, 2 London-born, 3 smartly-dressed, 4 cat-like, 5 200-word, 6 world-famous, 7 hand-operated, 8 Oxford-educated, 9 a red-carpeted corridor, 10 She was fair-haired. **Ex.44B:** 1 painted red-brick, 2 A five-storied building, 3 is mushroom-shaped, 4 dress-conscious, 5 was awful-tasted, 6 was bitter-sweet, 7 He was always bad-tempered, 8 are men-eaters, 9 sky-blue, 10 a French-speaking guide, 11 an eight-men crew, 12 a strange-sounding voice, 13 China-built, 14 They are very bad-mannered, 15 The noise was ear-splitting, 16 is freely-spending, 17 The firm is Zurich-based, 18 He certainly is well-intentioned, 19 is football-mad, 20 are very high-priced. **Ex.45:** 1 kind-hearted, 2 empty-handed, 3 fully-clothed, 4 long-legged, 5 absent-minded, 6 good-looking, 7 loud-mouthed, 8 short-tempered, 9 dog-eared, 10 red-headed. **Ex.48:** 1b, 2d, 3a, 4e, 5c, 6g, 7f, 8j, 9h, 10i. **Ex.49:** 1c, 2a, 3b, 4f, 5d, 6e, 7h, 8j, 9g, 10i. **Ex.52:** 1 flip-flop, 2 walkie-talkie, 3 chit-chat, 4 bow-wow, 5 chi-chi, 6 topsy-turvy, 7 dilly-dally, 8 hip-hop, 9 lovey-dovey, 10 nitty-gritty.

### IDIOMS: MIXED PRACTICE

**Ex.54A:** 1d, 2f, 3a, 4e, 5b, 6c, 7j, 8i, 9h, 10g. **Ex.54B:** 1i, 2f, 3j, 4b, 5a, 6h, 7c, 8d, 9e, 10g. **Ex.55:** 1 red, 2 brown, 3 green, 4 blue, 5 green, 6 white, 7 blue, 8 red, 9 yellow, 10 white, 11 pink, 12 pink, 13 red, 14 red, 15 blue, 16 red. **Ex.56:** 1 tongue, 2 feet, 3 ear, 4 mouth, 5 head, 6 shoulder, 7 fingers, 8 nose, 9 teeth, 10 tongue, 11 stag, 12 cat, 13 butterflies, 14 scapegoat, 15 head. **Ex.57:** 1 flogging a dead horse, 2 let the cat out of the bag, 3 hold my tongue, 4 pulling your leg, 5 butterflies in my stomach, 6 a straight face, 7 smell a rat, 8 guinea pig, 9 cold fish, 10 bear fruit, 11 my cup of tea, 12 close your eyes, 13 puts my back up, 14 make a monkey out of him, 15 with a pinch of salt. **Ex.58:** 1 say 'Boo' to a goose, 2 cold fish, 3 little bird told, 4 mouth water, 5 eat his cake and have it, 6 play cat and mouse, 7 easy as pie, 8, 9 room to swing a cat, 10 cat on a hot tin roof, 11, 12 frog in my mouth, 13 cloud has a silver lining, 14 of a feather, 15 bear with a sore head, 16 high flyer, 17 Jack of all trades, 18 Know-all/Smart aleck, 19 lameluck, 20. tearaways. **Ex.59:** 1f, 2h, 3a, 4b, 5g, 6c, 7e, 8d. **Ex.60:** 1 resentment, 2 friction, 3 jealous, 4 row, 5 disagreement, 6 troublemaker, 7 aggressive, 8 nag. **Ex.61:** 1 tears, 2 sob, 3 heartbroken, 4 loss, 5 comfort, 6 grief, 7 sleepless, 8 recover, 9 withdrawn, 10 miss. **Ex.62:** 1 nerves, 2 tremble, 3 seat, 4 blush, 5 embarrassment, 6 shy, 7 tongue-tied, 8 stammer, 9 faint, 10 tranquiliser.

### PART III. IMPROVE YOUR GRAMMAR

**Ex.1:** 1 the person, 2 the only, 3. the thousand, 4 church, 5 a milk jug, 6 The PM, 7 The Computer, 8 the British Museum, 9 the last person, 10 the scissors, 11 in the car, 12 the sea, 13 the Greek Islands, 14 the job, 15 the Japanese one, 16 work, 17 a good job, 18 a hundred miles, 19 the Tower, 20 the English. **Ex.2:** 1 -, the, 2 The, the, 3 The, the, -, 4 -, the, the, 5 the/ -, the, -, 6 the, -, 7 -, -, 8 the, -, 9 the, the, a, 10 the, -, 11 the,

the, 12 an, the, the, 13 -, the, 14 The, -, -, 15 -, -, -, 16 The, -, the, 17 The, -, -, 18 -, a, -, 19 The, -, the, a, 20 -, a, 21 The, the, 22 a, -, -, 23 The, the, 24 the, the, 25 -, a, 26 -, the, 27 -, the, the, the/-, the, 28 a, a, the, 29 the, a, -, the, 30 the, a. **Ex.4 A:** 1 highly, 2 cheap 3 nearly, 4 freely, 5 high, 6 justly, 7 widely, 8 fine, 9 dead, 10 right, 11 deeply, 12 high, 13 directly, 14 free, 15 prettily. **Ex.4 B:** 1 high, highly, 2 wide, widely, 3 high, highly, 4 widely, wide, 5 highly, high, 6 wide, widely, 7 highly, high, 8 deeply, deep 9 hard, hardly, 10 closely, close, 11 deeply, deep 12 short, shortly. **Ex.5:** 1 annoyed, 2 bored, 3 confused, 4 disappointing, 5 terrifying, 6 boring, 7 puzzling, 8 relaxing, 9 shocking, 10 frightened, 11 surprising, 12 fascinating, 13 exhausting, 14 thrilling, 15 depressed, 16 amused, 17 fascinate, 18 disappointed, 19 relaxed, 20 surprised. **Ex.8:** 1 that, 2 which, 3 Whatever, 4 who, 5 which, 6 which, 7 which, 8 who, 9 when, 10 who, **Ex.9:** 1 Whoever, 2 which, 3 whose, 4 which, 5 who, 6 when, 7 whatever, 8 Whenever, 9 whose, 10 which, 11 that/which, 12 that/which, 13 who, 14 who, 15 that/which.

#### PART IV. GET READY FOR THE CONTEST

**Ex.1:** A: 1 of 2 in, 3 since, 4 as, 5 on, 6 where, 7 but, 8 hand, 9 first, 10 which, 11 their, 12 However, 13 with, 14 to, 15 under. B: 1 face, 2 known/thought, 3 round/around, 4 weight, 5 connected, 6 lack, 7 convinced, sure, confident, 8 holding, 9 saying, 10 concerned, 11 offered, 12 hated/refused, 13 gesture/behaviour, 14 evident/visible, 15 boost, 16 attempt, 17 energy, 18 talked, 19 already, 20 turned, 21 understatement, 22 question, 23 ever/before. **Ex.2:** 1 led, 2 proved, 3 issued, 4 tempt, 5 blame, 6 process, 7 record, 8 applied, 9 support, 10 presence, 11 match, 12 attention, 13 appreciate, 14 drew, 15 struck, 16 bias, 17 buffet, 18 affair, 19 adjust, 20 21 22 23 24 25 charge, 26 check. **Ex.3:** 1K, 2H, 3A, 4F, 5I, 6B, 7G, 8L, 9E, 10D. **Ex.4:** 1 the Imperial, 2 scenery, 3 wander, 4 quiet, 5 shade, 6 within, 7 historic, 8 arranged, 9 nearby, 10 on. **Ex.5:** A: 1B, 2D, 3A, 4B, 5A, 6C. B: 7B, 8A, 9B, 10D, 11C, 12D. C: 13 B, 14D, 15A, 16C, 17D, 18A. D: 19B, 20A, 21D, 22C, 23D, 24B. **Ex.6:** 1b, 2a, 3d, 4a, 5b, 6c, 7d, 8a, 9c, 10c, 11c, 12a, 13b, 14d, 15b, 16d, 17a, 18a, 19b, 20d. **Ex.7:** 1 doze off, 2 cropped up, 3 stowing away in, 4 catch on, 5 wear off, 6 sort out. **Ex.8:** 1 is nolimit to his, 2 are not used to eating, 3 does his appearance strike, 4 is devoid of, 5 were over the moon when our first grandchild, 6 is always finding fault with our, 7 will be given the sack, 8 makes no difference for me whether you come, 9 are twice as many women as men, 10 no prospect of Frances being. **Ex.9:** A: 1 incredibly, 2 conservation, 3 majestic, 4 Primarily, 5 keeping, 6 life-long, 7 ability, 8 overtire, 9 beneficial, 10 stimulation, 11 importance, 12 breeding, 13 captivity, 14 extensive, 15 daily; B: 1 various, 2 successful, 3 encourage, 4 payment, 5 automatically, 6 disadvantage, 7 unusual, 8 operation, 9 popularity, 10 solution. **Ex.10:** 1f, 2c, 3j, 4l, 5a, 6k, 7b, 8i, 9g, 10d, 11e, 12h. **Ex.11:** 1He, 2Jh, 3Eb, 4Ac, 5Kd, 6Df, 7Ig, 8Ci. **Ex.12:** 1 give, 2 clear, 3 offense, 4 keep, 5 gap, 6 Beware, 7 off, 8 missing, 9 disturb, 10 care. **Ex.13:** 1l, 2c, 3, 4b, 5g, 6i, 7j, 8k. **Ex.14:** 1 - A3, 2 - C6, 3 - D2, 4 - B5.

#### PART V. TEST YOURSELF.

**Task 1.** 1C, 2N, 3J, 4D, 5Q, 6M, 7B, 8P, 9H, 10F, 11G, 12A, 13I, 14O, 15L. **Task 2:** 1 head, 2 bar, 3 half, 4 plain, 5 challenge, 6 check, 7 excuse, 8 issue, 9 interest, 10 treat. **Task 3:** 1. matter how fast we drive, 2 occurred to us, 3 had Paula reached the gate than, 4 behaviour at the party was beyond, 5 may have escaped your. **Task 4:** 1I, 2A, 3B, 4T, 5G, 6K, 7F. **Task 5:** 1 brighten, 2 uneventful, 3 handful, 4 decently, 5 attractive, 6 costly, 7 carefully, 8 discompose, 9 proprietress, 10 outlined, 11 residing, 12 bewilderingly, 13 irreparable, 14 recall, 15 joining. **Task 6:** 1-1 C, 2-8 A, 3-4, 9 B, 4-12, 7 F, 5-14 D, 6-15 G. **Task 7:** 1C, 2A, 3A, 4B, 5C, 6D, 7D,



8A, 9D, 10A, 11A, 12C, 13B. **Task 8:** 1 place, 2 offspring, 3 drinks, 4 get, 5 intelligent, 6 friend; man, 7 sleep  
8 pub, 9 get on. **Task 9:** 1 they, 2 flight attendant, 3 spouse, 4 Native American. **Task 10:** 1 trespassers,  
2 refrain, 3 dismount, 4 admission, 5 penalty. **Task 11:** 1d, 2j, 3a, 4i, 5b, 6f, 7h, 8e, 9k, 10c.

Total – 100 points = 100%.

Score the results:

100 – 90% = excellent; 89-70% == good; 69-50 = satisfactory; less than 50% = bad.

ISBN 978-5-4439-1114-4



9 785443 911144 >